



Department  
for Education

# **The national curriculum in England**

**Framework document**

**December 2014**

# Contents

1. Introduction	4
2. The school curriculum in England	5
3. The national curriculum in England	6
4. Inclusion	9
5. Numeracy and mathematics	10
6. Language and literacy	11
7. Programmes of study and attainment targets	13
English	14
Spoken language – years 1 to 6	18
Key stage 1 – year 1	20
Key stage 1 – year 2	27
Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4	34
Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6	42
English Appendix 1: Spelling	50
Spelling – work for year 1	51
Spelling – work for year 2	56
Spelling – work for years 3 and 4	60
Word list – years 3 and 4	65
Spelling – years 5 and 6	67
Word list – years 5 and 6	72
International Phonetic Alphabet (non-statutory)	74
English Appendix 2: Vocabulary, grammar and punctuation	75
Key stages 3 and 4	81
Glossary for the programmes of study for English (non-statutory)	89
Mathematics	108
Key stage 1 – years 1 and 2	110
Year 1 programme of study	111
Year 2 programme of study	116
Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4	122
Year 3 programme of study	123
Year 4 programme of study	129

Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6	135
Year 5 programme of study	136
Year 6 programme of study	144
Mathematics Appendix 1: Examples of formal written methods for addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	151
Key stage 3	153
Key stage 4	160
Science	168
Key stage 1	170
Key stage 1 programme of study – years 1 and 2	171
Year 1 programme of study	172
Year 2 programme of study	175
Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4	178
Lower key stage 2 programme of study	179
Year 3 programme of study	181
Year 4 programme of study	185
Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6	189
Upper key stage 2 programme of study	190
Year 5 programme of study	192
Year 6 programme of study	196
Key stage 3	200
Key stage 4	212
Art and design	225
Citizenship	227
Computing	230
Design and technology	234
Geography	240
History	245
Languages	252
Music	257
Physical education	260

# 1. Introduction

1.1 This document sets out the framework for the national curriculum and includes:

- contextual information about both the overall school curriculum and the statutory national curriculum, including the statutory basis of the latter
- aims for the statutory national curriculum
- statements on inclusion, and on the development of pupils' competence in numeracy and mathematics, language and literacy across the school curriculum
- programmes of study for all the national curriculum subjects.

## 2. The school curriculum in England

- 2.1 Every state-funded school must offer a curriculum which is balanced and broadly based<sup>1</sup> and which:
- promotes the spiritual, moral, cultural, mental and physical development of pupils at the school and of society, and
  - prepares pupils at the school for the opportunities, responsibilities and experiences of later life.
- 2.2 The school curriculum comprises all learning and other experiences that each school plans for its pupils. The national curriculum forms one part of the school curriculum.
- 2.3 All state schools are also required to make provision for a daily act of collective worship and must teach religious education to pupils at every key stage and sex and relationship education to pupils in secondary education.
- 2.4 Maintained schools in England are legally required to follow the statutory national curriculum which sets out in programmes of study, on the basis of key stages, subject content for those subjects that should be taught to all pupils. All schools must publish their school curriculum by subject and academic year online.<sup>2</sup>
- 2.5 All schools should make provision for personal, social, health and economic education (PSHE), drawing on good practice. Schools are also free to include other subjects or topics of their choice in planning and designing their own programme of education.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Section 78 of the 2002 Education Act: <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2002/32/section/78> which applies to all maintained schools. Academies are also required to offer a broad and balanced curriculum in accordance with Section 1 of the 2010 Academies Act: <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2010/32/section/1>

<sup>2</sup> From September 2012, all schools are required to publish information in relation to each academic year, relating to the content of the school's curriculum for each subject and details about how additional information relating to the curriculum may be obtained: <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/uksi/2012/1124/made>

# 3. The national curriculum in England

## Aims

- 3.1 The national curriculum provides pupils with an introduction to the essential knowledge that they need to be educated citizens. It introduces pupils to the best that has been thought and said; and helps engender an appreciation of human creativity and achievement.
- 3.2 The national curriculum is just one element in the education of every child. There is time and space in the school day and in each week, term and year to range beyond the national curriculum specifications. The national curriculum provides an outline of core knowledge around which teachers can develop exciting and stimulating lessons to promote the development of pupils' knowledge, understanding and skills as part of the wider school curriculum.

## Structure

- 3.3 Pupils of compulsory school age in community and foundation schools, including community special schools and foundation special schools, and in voluntary aided and voluntary controlled schools, must follow the national curriculum. It is organised on the basis of four key stages<sup>3</sup> and twelve subjects, classified in legal terms as 'core' and 'other foundation' subjects.
- 3.4 The Secretary of State for Education is required to publish programmes of study for each national curriculum subject, setting out the 'matters, skills and processes' to be taught at each key stage. Schools are free to choose how they organise their school day, as long as the content of the national curriculum programmes of study is taught to all pupils.

---

<sup>3</sup> The key stage 2 programmes of study for English, mathematics and science are presented in this document as 'lower' (years 3 and 4) and 'upper' (years 5 and 6). This distinction is made as guidance for teachers and is not reflected in legislation. The legal requirement is to cover the content of the programmes of study for years 3 to 6 by the end of key stage 2.

### 3. The national curriculum in England

3.5 The structure of the national curriculum, in terms of which subjects are compulsory at each key stage, is set out in the table below:

Figure 1 – Structure of the national curriculum

	Key stage 1	Key stage 2	Key stage 3	Key stage 4
<b>Age</b>	5 – 7	7 – 11	11 – 14	14 – 16
<b>Year groups</b>	1 – 2	3 – 6	7 – 9	10 – 11
<b>Core subjects</b>				
English	✓	✓	✓	✓
Mathematics	✓	✓	✓	✓
Science	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Foundation subjects</b>				
Art and design	✓	✓	✓	
Citizenship			✓	✓
Computing	✓	✓	✓	✓
Design and technology	✓	✓	✓	
Languages <sup>4</sup>		✓	✓	
Geography	✓	✓	✓	
History	✓	✓	✓	
Music	✓	✓	✓	
Physical education	✓	✓	✓	✓

3.6 All schools are also required to teach religious education at all key stages. Secondary schools must provide sex and relationship education.

Figure 2 – Statutory teaching of religious education and sex and relationship education

	Key stage 1	Key stage 2	Key stage 3	Key stage 4
<b>Age</b>	5 – 7	7 – 11	11 – 14	14 – 16
<b>Year groups</b>	1 – 2	3 – 6	7 – 9	10 – 11
Religious education	✓	✓	✓	✓
Sex and relationship education			✓	✓

<sup>4</sup> At key stage 2 the subject title is 'foreign language'; at key stage 3 it is 'modern foreign language'.

## Key stage 4 entitlement areas

- 3.7 The arts (comprising art and design, music, dance, drama and media arts), design and technology, the humanities (comprising geography and history) and modern foreign language are not compulsory national curriculum subjects after the age of 14, but all pupils in maintained schools have a statutory entitlement to be able to study a subject in each of those four areas.
- 3.8 The statutory requirements in relation to the entitlement areas are:
- schools must provide access to a minimum of one course in each of the four entitlement areas
  - schools must provide the opportunity for pupils to take a course in all four areas, should they wish to do so
  - a course that meets the entitlement requirements must give pupils the opportunity to obtain an approved qualification.



# 4. Inclusion

## Setting suitable challenges

- 4.1 Teachers should set high expectations for every pupil. They should plan stretching work for pupils whose attainment is significantly above the expected standard. They have an even greater obligation to plan lessons for pupils who have low levels of prior attainment or come from disadvantaged backgrounds. Teachers should use appropriate assessment to set targets which are deliberately ambitious.

## Responding to pupils' needs and overcoming potential barriers for individuals and groups of pupils

- 4.2 Teachers should take account of their duties under equal opportunities legislation that covers race, disability, sex, religion or belief, sexual orientation, pregnancy and maternity, and gender reassignment.<sup>5</sup>
- 4.3 A wide range of pupils have special educational needs, many of whom also have disabilities. Lessons should be planned to ensure that there are no barriers to every pupil achieving. In many cases, such planning will mean that these pupils will be able to study the full national curriculum. The [0-25 Special Education and Disability Code of Practice](#) includes statutory advice on approaches for identification and assessment which can support this. A minority of pupils will need access to specialist equipment and different approaches. The SEN and Disability Code of Practice is clear about what should be done to meet their needs.
- 4.4 With the right teaching, that recognises their individual needs, many disabled pupils may have little need for additional resources beyond the aids which they use as part of their daily life. Teachers must plan lessons so that these pupils can study every national curriculum subject. Potential areas of difficulty should be identified and addressed at the outset of work.
- 4.5 Teachers must also take account of the needs of pupils whose first language is not English. Monitoring of progress should take account of the pupil's age, length of time in this country, previous educational experience and ability in other languages.
- 4.6 The ability of pupils for whom English is an additional language to take part in the national curriculum may be in advance of their communication skills in English. Teachers should plan teaching opportunities to help pupils develop their English and should aim to provide the support pupils need to take part in all subjects.

---

<sup>5</sup> Age is a protected characteristic under the Equality Act 2010 but it is not applicable to schools in relation to education or (as far as relating to those under the age of 18) the provision of services; it is a relevant protected characteristic in relation to the provision of services or employment (so when thinking about staff). Marriage and civil partnership are also a protected characteristic but only in relation to employment.

## 5. Numeracy and mathematics

- 5.1 Teachers should use every relevant subject to develop pupils' mathematical fluency. Confidence in numeracy and other mathematical skills is a precondition of success across the national curriculum.
- 5.2 Teachers should develop pupils' numeracy and mathematical reasoning in all subjects so that they understand and appreciate the importance of mathematics. Pupils should be taught to apply arithmetic fluently to problems, understand and use measures, make estimates and sense check their work. Pupils should apply their geometric and algebraic understanding, and relate their understanding of probability to the notions of risk and uncertainty. They should also understand the cycle of collecting, presenting and analysing data. They should be taught to apply their mathematics to both routine and non-routine problems, including breaking down more complex problems into a series of simpler steps.

## 6. Language and literacy

- 6.1 Teachers should develop pupils' spoken language, reading, writing and vocabulary as integral aspects of the teaching of every subject. English is both a subject in its own right and the medium for teaching; for pupils, understanding the language provides access to the whole curriculum. Fluency in the English language is an essential foundation for success in all subjects.

### Spoken language

- 6.2 Pupils should be taught to speak clearly and convey ideas confidently using Standard English. They should learn to justify ideas with reasons; ask questions to check understanding; develop vocabulary and build knowledge; negotiate; evaluate and build on the ideas of others; and select the appropriate register for effective communication. They should be taught to give well-structured descriptions and explanations and develop their understanding through speculating, hypothesising and exploring ideas. This will enable them to clarify their thinking as well as organise their ideas for writing.

### Reading and writing

- 6.3 Teachers should develop pupils' reading and writing in all subjects to support their acquisition of knowledge. Pupils should be taught to read fluently, understand extended prose (both fiction and non-fiction) and be encouraged to read for pleasure. Schools should do everything to promote wider reading. They should provide library facilities and set ambitious expectations for reading at home. Pupils should develop the stamina and skills to write at length, with accurate spelling and punctuation. They should be taught the correct use of grammar. They should build on what they have been taught to expand the range of their writing and the variety of the grammar they use. The writing they do should include narratives, explanations, descriptions, comparisons, summaries and evaluations: such writing supports them in rehearsing, understanding and consolidating what they have heard or read.

### Vocabulary development

6.4 Pupils' acquisition and command of vocabulary are key to their learning and progress across the whole curriculum. Teachers should therefore develop vocabulary actively, building systematically on pupils' current knowledge. They should increase pupils' store of words in general; simultaneously, they should also make links between known and new vocabulary and discuss the shades of meaning in similar words. In this way, pupils expand the vocabulary choices that are available to them when they write. In addition, it is vital for pupils' comprehension that they understand the meanings of words they meet in their reading across all subjects, and older pupils should be taught the meaning of instruction verbs that they may meet in examination questions. It is particularly important to induct pupils into the language which defines each subject in its own right, such as accurate mathematical and scientific language.

# 7. Programmes of study and attainment targets

- 7.1 The following pages set out the statutory programmes of study and attainment targets for all subjects. Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets] or the content indicated as being 'non-statutory'.

# English

## Purpose of study

English has a pre-eminent place in education and in society. A high-quality education in English will teach pupils to speak and write fluently so that they can communicate their ideas and emotions to others and through their reading and listening, others can communicate with them. Through reading in particular, pupils have a chance to develop culturally, emotionally, intellectually, socially and spiritually. Literature, especially, plays a key role in such development. Reading also enables pupils both to acquire knowledge and to build on what they already know. All the skills of language are essential to participating fully as a member of society; pupils, therefore, who do not learn to speak, read and write fluently and confidently are effectively disenfranchised.

## Aims

The overarching aim for English in the national curriculum is to promote high standards of language and literacy by equipping pupils with a strong command of the spoken and written word, and to develop their love of literature through widespread reading for enjoyment. The national curriculum for English aims to ensure that all pupils:

- read easily, fluently and with good understanding
- develop the habit of reading widely and often, for both pleasure and information
- acquire a wide vocabulary, an understanding of grammar and knowledge of linguistic conventions for reading, writing and spoken language
- appreciate our rich and varied literary heritage
- write clearly, accurately and coherently, adapting their language and style in and for a range of contexts, purposes and audiences
- use discussion in order to learn; they should be able to elaborate and explain clearly their understanding and ideas
- are competent in the arts of speaking and listening, making formal presentations, demonstrating to others and participating in debate.

## Spoken language

The national curriculum for English reflects the importance of spoken language in pupils' development across the whole curriculum – cognitively, socially and linguistically. Spoken language underpins the development of reading and writing. The quality and variety of language that pupils hear and speak are vital for developing their vocabulary and grammar and their understanding for reading and writing. Teachers should therefore ensure the

## English

continual development of pupils' confidence and competence in spoken language and listening skills. Pupils should develop a capacity to explain their understanding of books and other reading, and to prepare their ideas before they write. They must be assisted in making their thinking clear to themselves as well as to others and teachers should ensure that pupils build secure foundations by using discussion to probe and remedy their misconceptions. Pupils should also be taught to understand and use the conventions for discussion and debate.

All pupils should be enabled to participate in and gain knowledge, skills and understanding associated with the artistic practice of drama. Pupils should be able to adopt, create and sustain a range of roles, responding appropriately to others in role. They should have opportunities to improvise, devise and script drama for one another and a range of audiences, as well as to rehearse, refine, share and respond thoughtfully to drama and theatre performances.

Statutory requirements which underpin all aspects of spoken language across the six years of primary education form part of the national curriculum. These are reflected and contextualised within the reading and writing domains which follow.

## Reading

The programmes of study for reading at key stages 1 and 2 consist of two dimensions:

- word reading
- comprehension (both listening and reading).

It is essential that teaching focuses on developing pupils' competence in both dimensions; different kinds of teaching are needed for each.

Skilled word reading involves both the speedy working out of the pronunciation of unfamiliar printed words (decoding) and the speedy recognition of familiar printed words. Underpinning both is the understanding that the letters on the page represent the sounds in spoken words. This is why phonics should be emphasised in the early teaching of reading to beginners (i.e. unskilled readers) when they start school.

Good comprehension draws from linguistic knowledge (in particular of vocabulary and grammar) and on knowledge of the world. Comprehension skills develop through pupils' experience of high-quality discussion with the teacher, as well as from reading and discussing a range of stories, poems and non-fiction. All pupils must be encouraged to read widely across both fiction and non-fiction to develop their knowledge of themselves and the world in which they live, to establish an appreciation and love of reading, and to gain knowledge across the curriculum. Reading widely and often increases pupils' vocabulary because they encounter words they would rarely hear or use in everyday speech. Reading also feeds pupils' imagination and opens up a treasure-house of wonder and joy for curious young minds.

It is essential that, by the end of their primary education, all pupils are able to read fluently, and with confidence, in any subject in their forthcoming secondary education.

## Writing

The programmes of study for writing at key stages 1 and 2 are constructed similarly to those for reading:

- transcription (spelling and handwriting)
- composition (articulating ideas and structuring them in speech and writing).

It is essential that teaching develops pupils' competence in these two dimensions. In addition, pupils should be taught how to plan, revise and evaluate their writing. These aspects of writing have been incorporated into the programmes of study for composition.

Writing down ideas fluently depends on effective transcription: that is, on spelling quickly and accurately through knowing the relationship between sounds and letters (phonics) and understanding the morphology (word structure) and orthography (spelling structure) of words. Effective composition involves forming, articulating and communicating ideas, and then organising them coherently for a reader. This requires clarity, awareness of the audience, purpose and context, and an increasingly wide knowledge of vocabulary and grammar. Writing also depends on fluent, legible and, eventually, speedy handwriting.

## Spelling, vocabulary, grammar, punctuation and glossary

The two statutory appendices – on [spelling](#) and on [vocabulary, grammar and punctuation](#) – give an overview of the specific features that should be included in teaching the programmes of study.

Opportunities for teachers to enhance pupils' vocabulary arise naturally from their reading and writing. As vocabulary increases, teachers should show pupils how to understand the relationships between words, how to understand nuances in meaning, and how to develop their understanding of, and ability to use, figurative language. They should also teach pupils how to work out and clarify the meanings of unknown words and words with more than one meaning. References to developing pupils' vocabulary are also included within the appendices.

Pupils should be taught to control their speaking and writing consciously and to use Standard English. They should be taught to use the elements of spelling, grammar, punctuation and 'language about language' listed. This is not intended to constrain or restrict teachers' creativity, but simply to provide the structure on which they can construct exciting lessons. A non-statutory [Glossary](#) is provided for teachers.

Throughout the programmes of study, teachers should teach pupils the vocabulary they need to discuss their reading, writing and spoken language. It is important that pupils learn the correct grammatical terms in English and that these terms are integrated within teaching.



## School curriculum

The programmes of study for English are set out year-by-year for key stage 1 and two-yearly for key stage 2. The single year blocks at key stage 1 reflect the rapid pace of development in word reading during these two years. Schools are, however, only required to teach the relevant programme of study by the end of the key stage. Within each key stage, schools therefore have the flexibility to introduce content earlier or later than set out in the programme of study. In addition, schools can introduce key stage content during an earlier key stage if appropriate. All schools are also required to set out their school curriculum for English on a year-by-year basis and make this information available online.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets] or the content indicated as being ‘non-statutory’.**

# Spoken language – years 1 to 6

## Spoken language

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- listen and respond appropriately to adults and their peers
- ask relevant questions to extend their understanding and knowledge
- use relevant strategies to build their vocabulary
- articulate and justify answers, arguments and opinions
- give well-structured descriptions, explanations and narratives for different purposes, including for expressing feelings
- maintain attention and participate actively in collaborative conversations, staying on topic and initiating and responding to comments
- use spoken language to develop understanding through speculating, hypothesising, imagining and exploring ideas
- speak audibly and fluently with an increasing command of Standard English
- participate in discussions, presentations, performances, role play, improvisations and debates
- gain, maintain and monitor the interest of the listener(s)
- consider and evaluate different viewpoints, attending to and building on the contributions of others
- select and use appropriate registers for effective communication.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

These statements apply to all years. The content should be taught at a level appropriate to the age of the pupils. Pupils should build on the oral language skills that have been taught in preceding years.

Pupils should be taught to develop their competence in spoken language and listening to enhance the effectiveness with which they are able to communicate across a range of contexts and to a range of audiences. They should therefore have opportunities to work in groups of different sizes – in pairs, small groups, large groups and as a whole class. Pupils should understand how to take turns and when and how to participate constructively in conversations and debates.

Attention should also be paid to increasing pupils' vocabulary, ranging from describing

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

their immediate world and feelings to developing a broader, deeper and richer vocabulary to discuss abstract concepts and a wider range of topics, and to enhancing their knowledge about language as a whole.

Pupils should receive constructive feedback on their spoken language and listening, not only to improve their knowledge and skills but also to establish secure foundations for effective spoken language in their studies at primary school, helping them to achieve in secondary education and beyond.

## Key stage 1 – year 1

During year 1 teachers should build on work from the Early Years Foundation Stage, making sure that pupils can sound and blend unfamiliar printed words quickly and accurately using the phonic knowledge and skills that they have already learnt. Teachers should also ensure that pupils continue to learn new grapheme-phoneme correspondences (GPCs) and revise and consolidate those learnt earlier. The understanding that the letter(s) on the page represent the sounds in spoken words should underpin pupils' reading and spelling of all words. This includes common words containing unusual GPCs. The term 'common exception words' is used throughout the programmes of study for such words.

Alongside this knowledge of GPCs, pupils need to develop the skill of blending the sounds into words for reading and establish the habit of applying this skill whenever they encounter new words. This will be supported by practice in reading books consistent with their developing phonic knowledge and skill and their knowledge of common exception words. At the same time they will need to hear, share and discuss a wide range of high-quality books to develop a love of reading and broaden their vocabulary.

Pupils should be helped to read words without overt sounding and blending after a few encounters. Those who are slow to develop this skill should have extra practice.

Pupils' writing during year 1 will generally develop at a slower pace than their reading. This is because they need to encode the sounds they hear in words (spelling skills), develop the physical skill needed for handwriting, and learn how to organise their ideas in writing.

Pupils entering year 1 who have not yet met the early learning goals for literacy should continue to follow their school's curriculum for the Early Years Foundation Stage to develop their word reading, spelling and language skills. However, these pupils should follow the year 1 programme of study in terms of the books they listen to and discuss, so that they develop their vocabulary and understanding of grammar, as well as their knowledge more generally across the curriculum. If they are still struggling to decode and spell, they need to be taught to do this urgently through a rigorous and systematic phonics programme so that they catch up rapidly.

Teachers should ensure that their teaching develops pupils' oral vocabulary as well as their ability to understand and use a variety of grammatical structures, giving particular support to pupils whose oral language skills are insufficiently developed.

## Year 1 programme of study

### Reading – word reading

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- apply phonic knowledge and skills as the route to decode words
- respond speedily with the correct sound to graphemes (letters or groups of letters) for all 40+ phonemes, including, where applicable, alternative sounds for graphemes
- read accurately by blending sounds in unfamiliar words containing GPCs that have been taught
- read common exception words, noting unusual correspondences between spelling and sound and where these occur in the word
- read words containing taught GPCs and –s, –es, –ing, –ed, –er and –est endings
- read other words of more than one syllable that contain taught GPCs
- read words with contractions [for example, I'm, I'll, we'll], and understand that the apostrophe represents the omitted letter(s)
- read aloud accurately books that are consistent with their developing phonic knowledge and that do not require them to use other strategies to work out words
- re-read these books to build up their fluency and confidence in word reading.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should revise and consolidate the GPCs and the common exception words taught in Reception. As soon as they can read words comprising the year 1 GPCs accurately and speedily, they should move on to the year 2 programme of study for word reading.

The number, order and choice of exception words taught will vary according to the phonics programme being used. Ensuring that pupils are aware of the GPCs they contain, however unusual these are, supports spelling later.

Young readers encounter words that they have not seen before much more frequently than experienced readers do, and they may not know the meaning of some of these. Practice at reading such words by sounding and blending can provide opportunities not only for pupils to develop confidence in their decoding skills, but also for teachers to explain the meaning and thus develop pupils' vocabulary.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be taught how to read words with suffixes by being helped to build on the root words that they can read already. Pupils' reading and re-reading of books that are closely matched to their developing phonic knowledge and knowledge of common exception words supports their fluency, as well as increasing their confidence in their reading skills. Fluent word reading greatly assists comprehension, especially when pupils come to read longer books.

## Reading – comprehension

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop pleasure in reading, motivation to read, vocabulary and understanding by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of poems, stories and non-fiction at a level beyond that at which they can read independently
  - being encouraged to link what they read or hear read to their own experiences
  - becoming very familiar with key stories, fairy stories and traditional tales, retelling them and considering their particular characteristics
  - recognising and joining in with predictable phrases
  - learning to appreciate rhymes and poems, and to recite some by heart
  - discussing word meanings, linking new meanings to those already known
- understand both the books they can already read accurately and fluently and those they listen to by:
  - drawing on what they already know or on background information and vocabulary provided by the teacher
  - checking that the text makes sense to them as they read and correcting inaccurate reading
  - discussing the significance of the title and events
  - making inferences on the basis of what is being said and done
  - predicting what might happen on the basis of what has been read so far
- participate in discussion about what is read to them, taking turns and listening to what others say
- explain clearly their understanding of what is read to them.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should have extensive experience of listening to, sharing and discussing a wide range of high-quality books with the teacher, other adults and each other to engender a love of reading at the same time as they are reading independently.

Pupils' vocabulary should be developed when they listen to books read aloud and when they discuss what they have heard. Such vocabulary can also feed into their writing. Knowing the meaning of more words increases pupils' chances of understanding when they read by themselves. The meaning of some new words should be introduced to pupils before they start to read on their own, so that these unknown words do not hold up their comprehension.

However, once pupils have already decoded words successfully, the meaning of those that are new to them can be discussed with them, so contributing to developing their early skills of inference. By listening frequently to stories, poems and non-fiction that they cannot yet read for themselves, pupils begin to understand how written language can be structured in order, for example, to build surprise in narratives or to present facts in non-fiction. Listening to and discussing information books and other non-fiction establishes the foundations for their learning in other subjects. Pupils should be shown some of the processes for finding out information.

Through listening, pupils also start to learn how language sounds and increase their vocabulary and awareness of grammatical structures. In due course, they will be able to draw on such grammar in their own writing.

Rules for effective discussions should be agreed with and demonstrated for pupils. They should help to develop and evaluate them, with the expectation that everyone takes part. Pupils should be helped to consider the opinions of others.

Role-play can help pupils to identify with and explore characters and to try out the language they have listened to.

## Writing – transcription

### Statutory requirements

#### Spelling (see [English Appendix 1](#))

Pupils should be taught to:

- spell:
  - words containing each of the 40+ phonemes already taught
  - common exception words
  - the days of the week

### Statutory requirements

- name the letters of the alphabet:
  - naming the letters of the alphabet in order
  - using letter names to distinguish between alternative spellings of the same sound
- add prefixes and suffixes:
  - using the spelling rule for adding –s or –es as the plural marker for nouns and the third person singular marker for verbs
  - using the prefix un–
  - using –ing, –ed, –er and –est where no change is needed in the spelling of root words [for example, helping, helped, helper, eating, quicker, quickest]
- apply simple spelling rules and guidance, as listed in [English Appendix 1](#)
- write from memory simple sentences dictated by the teacher that include words using the GPCs and common exception words taught so far.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Reading should be taught alongside spelling, so that pupils understand that they can read back words they have spelt.

Pupils should be shown how to segment spoken words into individual phonemes and then how to represent the phonemes by the appropriate grapheme(s). It is important to recognise that phoneme-grapheme correspondences (which underpin spelling) are more variable than grapheme-phoneme correspondences (which underpin reading). For this reason, pupils need to do much more word-specific rehearsal for spelling than for reading.

At this stage pupils will be spelling some words in a phonically plausible way, even if sometimes incorrectly. Misspellings of words that pupils have been taught to spell should be corrected; other misspelt words should be used to teach pupils about alternative ways of representing those sounds.

Writing simple dictated sentences that include words taught so far gives pupils opportunities to apply and practise their spelling.



### Statutory requirements

#### Handwriting

Pupils should be taught to:

- sit correctly at a table, holding a pencil comfortably and correctly
- begin to form lower-case letters in the correct direction, starting and finishing in the right place
- form capital letters
- form digits 0-9
- understand which letters belong to which handwriting 'families' (i.e. letters that are formed in similar ways) and to practise these.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Handwriting requires frequent and discrete, direct teaching. Pupils should be able to form letters correctly and confidently. The size of the writing implement (pencil, pen) should not be too large for a young pupil's hand. Whatever is being used should allow the pupil to hold it easily and correctly so that bad habits are avoided.

Left-handed pupils should receive specific teaching to meet their needs.

## Writing – composition

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- write sentences by:
  - saying out loud what they are going to write about
  - composing a sentence orally before writing it
  - sequencing sentences to form short narratives
  - re-reading what they have written to check that it makes sense
- discuss what they have written with the teacher or other pupils
- read aloud their writing clearly enough to be heard by their peers and the teacher.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

At the beginning of year 1, not all pupils will have the spelling and handwriting skills they need to write down everything that they can compose out loud.

Pupils should understand, through demonstration, the skills and processes essential to writing: that is, thinking aloud as they collect ideas, drafting, and re-reading to check their meaning is clear.

## Writing – vocabulary, grammar and punctuation

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop their understanding of the concepts set out in [English Appendix 2](#) by:
  - leaving spaces between words
  - joining words and joining clauses using and
  - beginning to punctuate sentences using a capital letter and a full stop, question mark or exclamation mark
  - using a capital letter for names of people, places, the days of the week, and the personal pronoun 'I'
  - learning the grammar for year 1 in English Appendix 2
- use the grammatical terminology in English Appendix 2 in discussing their writing.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be taught to recognise sentence boundaries in spoken sentences and to use the vocabulary listed in [English Appendix 2](#) ('Terminology for pupils') when their writing is discussed.

Pupils should begin to use some of the distinctive features of Standard English in their writing. 'Standard English' is defined in the [Glossary](#).

## Key stage 1 – year 2

By the beginning of year 2, pupils should be able to read all common graphemes. They should be able to read unfamiliar words containing these graphemes, accurately and without undue hesitation, by sounding them out in books that are matched closely to each pupil's level of word reading knowledge. They should also be able to read many common words containing GPCs taught so far [for example, shout, hand, stop, or dream], without needing to blend the sounds out loud first. Pupils' reading of common exception words [for example, you, could, many, or people], should be secure. Pupils will increase their fluency by being able to read these words easily and automatically. Finally, pupils should be able to retell some familiar stories that have been read to and discussed with them or that they have acted out during year 1.

During year 2, teachers should continue to focus on establishing pupils' accurate and speedy word reading skills. They should also make sure that pupils listen to and discuss a wide range of stories, poems, plays and information books; this should include whole books. The sooner that pupils can read well and do so frequently, the sooner they will be able to increase their vocabulary, comprehension and their knowledge across the wider curriculum.

In writing, pupils at the beginning of year 2 should be able to compose individual sentences orally and then write them down. They should be able to spell correctly many of the words covered in year 1 (see [English Appendix 1](#)). They should also be able to make phonically plausible attempts to spell words they have not yet learnt. Finally, they should be able to form individual letters correctly, so establishing good handwriting habits from the beginning.

It is important to recognise that pupils begin to meet extra challenges in terms of spelling during year 2. Increasingly, they should learn that there is not always an obvious connection between the way a word is said and the way it is spelt. Variations include different ways of spelling the same sound, the use of so-called silent letters and groups of letters in some words and, sometimes, spelling that has become separated from the way that words are now pronounced, such as the 'le' ending in table. Pupils' motor skills also need to be sufficiently advanced for them to write down ideas that they may be able to compose orally. In addition, writing is intrinsically harder than reading: pupils are likely to be able to read and understand more complex writing (in terms of its vocabulary and structure) than they are capable of producing themselves.

For pupils who do not have the phonic knowledge and skills they need for year 2, teachers should use the year 1 programmes of study for word reading and spelling so that pupils' word reading skills catch up. However, teachers should use the year 2 programme of study for comprehension so that these pupils hear and talk about new books, poems, other writing, and vocabulary with the rest of the class.

## Year 2 programme of study

### Reading – word reading

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- continue to apply phonic knowledge and skills as the route to decode words until automatic decoding has become embedded and reading is fluent
- read accurately by blending the sounds in words that contain the graphemes taught so far, especially recognising alternative sounds for graphemes
- read accurately words of two or more syllables that contain the same graphemes as above
- read words containing common suffixes
- read further common exception words, noting unusual correspondences between spelling and sound and where these occur in the word
- read most words quickly and accurately, without overt sounding and blending, when they have been frequently encountered
- read aloud books closely matched to their improving phonic knowledge, sounding out unfamiliar words accurately, automatically and without undue hesitation
- re-read these books to build up their fluency and confidence in word reading.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should revise and consolidate the GPCs and the common exception words taught in year 1. The exception words taught will vary slightly, depending on the phonics programme being used. As soon as pupils can read words comprising the year 2 GPCs accurately and speedily, they should move on to the years 3 and 4 programme of study for word reading.

When pupils are taught how to read longer words, they should be shown syllable boundaries and how to read each syllable separately before they combine them to read the word.

Pupils should be taught how to read suffixes by building on the root words that they have already learnt. The whole suffix should be taught as well as the letters that make it up.

Pupils who are still at the early stages of learning to read should have ample practice in reading books that are closely matched to their developing phonic knowledge and knowledge of common exception words. As soon as the decoding of most regular words and common exception words is embedded fully, the range of books that pupils can read independently will expand rapidly. Pupils should have opportunities to exercise choice in selecting books and be taught how to do so.

**Reading – comprehension****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop pleasure in reading, motivation to read, vocabulary and understanding by:
  - listening to, discussing and expressing views about a wide range of contemporary and classic poetry, stories and non-fiction at a level beyond that at which they can read independently
  - discussing the sequence of events in books and how items of information are related
  - becoming increasingly familiar with and retelling a wider range of stories, fairy stories and traditional tales
  - being introduced to non-fiction books that are structured in different ways
  - recognising simple recurring literary language in stories and poetry
  - discussing and clarifying the meanings of words, linking new meanings to known vocabulary
  - discussing their favourite words and phrases
  - continuing to build up a repertoire of poems learnt by heart, appreciating these and reciting some, with appropriate intonation to make the meaning clear
- understand both the books that they can already read accurately and fluently and those that they listen to by:
  - drawing on what they already know or on background information and vocabulary provided by the teacher
  - checking that the text makes sense to them as they read and correcting inaccurate reading
  - making inferences on the basis of what is being said and done
  - answering and asking questions
  - predicting what might happen on the basis of what has been read so far
- participate in discussion about books, poems and other works that are read to them and those that they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say
- explain and discuss their understanding of books, poems and other material, both those that they listen to and those that they read for themselves.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should be encouraged to read all the words in a sentence and to do this accurately, so that their understanding of what they read is not hindered by imprecise decoding (for example, by reading 'place' instead of 'palace').

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should monitor what they read, checking that the word they have decoded fits in with what else they have read and makes sense in the context of what they already know about the topic.

The meaning of new words should be explained to pupils within the context of what they are reading, and they should be encouraged to use morphology (such as prefixes) to work out unknown words.

Pupils should learn about cause and effect in both narrative and non-fiction (for example, what has prompted a character's behaviour in a story; why certain dates are commemorated annually). 'Thinking aloud' when reading to pupils may help them to understand what skilled readers do.

Deliberate steps should be taken to increase pupils' vocabulary and their awareness of grammar so that they continue to understand the differences between spoken and written language.

Discussion should be demonstrated to pupils. They should be guided to participate in it and they should be helped to consider the opinions of others. They should receive feedback on their discussions.

Role-play and other drama techniques can help pupils to identify with and explore characters. In these ways, they extend their understanding of what they read and have opportunities to try out the language they have listened to.

## Writing – transcription

### Statutory requirements

#### Spelling (see [English Appendix 1](#))

Pupils should be taught to:

- spell by:
  - segmenting spoken words into phonemes and representing these by graphemes, spelling many correctly
  - learning new ways of spelling phonemes for which one or more spellings are already known, and learn some words with each spelling, including a few common homophones
  - learning to spell common exception words
  - learning to spell more words with contracted forms
  - learning the possessive apostrophe (singular) [for example, the girl's book]
  - distinguishing between homophones and near-homophones
- add suffixes to spell longer words, including –ment, –ness, –ful, –less, –ly

### Statutory requirements

- apply spelling rules and guidance, as listed in [English Appendix 1](#)
- write from memory simple sentences dictated by the teacher that include words using the GPCs, common exception words and punctuation taught so far.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

In year 2, pupils move towards more word-specific knowledge of spelling, including homophones. The process of spelling should be emphasised: that is, that spelling involves segmenting spoken words into phonemes and then representing all the phonemes by graphemes in the right order. Pupils should do this both for single-syllable and multi-syllabic words.

At this stage children's spelling should be phonically plausible, even if not always correct. Misspellings of words that pupils have been taught to spell should be corrected; other misspelt words can be used as an opportunity to teach pupils about alternative ways of representing those sounds.

Pupils should be encouraged to apply their knowledge of suffixes from their word reading to their spelling. They should also draw from and apply their growing knowledge of word and spelling structure, as well as their knowledge of root words.

### Statutory requirements

#### Handwriting

Pupils should be taught to:

- form lower-case letters of the correct size relative to one another
- start using some of the diagonal and horizontal strokes needed to join letters and understand which letters, when adjacent to one another, are best left unjoined
- write capital letters and digits of the correct size, orientation and relationship to one another and to lower case letters
- use spacing between words that reflects the size of the letters.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should revise and practise correct letter formation frequently. They should be taught to write with a joined style as soon as they can form letters securely with the correct orientation.

## Writing – composition

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes towards and stamina for writing by:
  - writing narratives about personal experiences and those of others (real and fictional)
  - writing about real events
  - writing poetry
  - writing for different purposes
- consider what they are going to write before beginning by:
  - planning or saying out loud what they are going to write about
  - writing down ideas and/or key words, including new vocabulary
  - encapsulating what they want to say, sentence by sentence
- make simple additions, revisions and corrections to their own writing by:
  - evaluating their writing with the teacher and other pupils
  - re-reading to check that their writing makes sense and that verbs to indicate time are used correctly and consistently, including verbs in the continuous form
  - proof-reading to check for errors in spelling, grammar and punctuation [for example, ends of sentences punctuated correctly]
- read aloud what they have written with appropriate intonation to make the meaning clear.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Reading and listening to whole books, not simply extracts, helps pupils to increase their vocabulary and grammatical knowledge, including their knowledge of the vocabulary and grammar of Standard English. These activities also help them to understand how different types of writing, including narratives, are structured. All these can be drawn on for their writing.

Pupils should understand, through being shown these, the skills and processes essential to writing: that is, thinking aloud as they collect ideas, drafting, and re-reading to check their meaning is clear.

Drama and role-play can contribute to the quality of pupils' writing by providing opportunities for pupils to develop and order their ideas through playing roles and improvising scenes in various settings.

Pupils might draw on and use new vocabulary from their reading, their discussions about it (one-to-one and as a whole class) and from their wider experiences.



## Writing – vocabulary, grammar and punctuation

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop their understanding of the concepts set out in [English Appendix 2](#) by:
  - learning how to use both familiar and new punctuation correctly (see English Appendix 2), including full stops, capital letters, exclamation marks, question marks, commas for lists and apostrophes for contracted forms and the possessive (singular)
- learn how to use:
  - sentences with different forms: statement, question, exclamation, command
  - expanded noun phrases to describe and specify [for example, the blue butterfly]
  - the present and past tenses correctly and consistently including the progressive form
  - subordination (using when, if, that, or because) and co-ordination (using or, and, or but)
  - the grammar for year 2 in English Appendix 2
  - some features of written Standard English
- use and understand the grammatical terminology in English Appendix 2 in discussing their writing.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

The terms for discussing language should be embedded for pupils in the course of discussing their writing with them. Their attention should be drawn to the technical terms they need to learn.

## Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4

By the beginning of year 3, pupils should be able to read books written at an age-appropriate interest level. They should be able to read them accurately and at a speed that is sufficient for them to focus on understanding what they read rather than on decoding individual words. They should be able to decode most new words outside their spoken vocabulary, making a good approximation to the word's pronunciation. As their decoding skills become increasingly secure, teaching should be directed more towards developing their vocabulary and the breadth and depth of their reading, making sure that they become independent, fluent and enthusiastic readers who read widely and frequently. They should be developing their understanding and enjoyment of stories, poetry, plays and non-fiction, and learning to read silently. They should also be developing their knowledge and skills in reading non-fiction about a wide range of subjects. They should be learning to justify their views about what they have read: with support at the start of year 3 and increasingly independently by the end of year 4.

Pupils should be able to write down their ideas with a reasonable degree of accuracy and with good sentence punctuation. Teachers should therefore be consolidating pupils' writing skills, their vocabulary, their grasp of sentence structure and their knowledge of linguistic terminology. Teaching them to develop as writers involves teaching them to enhance the effectiveness of what they write as well as increasing their competence. Teachers should make sure that pupils build on what they have learnt, particularly in terms of the range of their writing and the more varied grammar, vocabulary and narrative structures from which they can draw to express their ideas. Pupils should be beginning to understand how writing can be different from speech. Joined handwriting should be the norm; pupils should be able to use it fast enough to keep pace with what they want to say.

Pupils' spelling of common words should be correct, including common exception words and other words that they have learnt (see [English Appendix 1](#)). Pupils should spell words as accurately as possible using their phonic knowledge and other knowledge of spelling, such as morphology and etymology.

Most pupils will not need further direct teaching of word reading skills: they are able to decode unfamiliar words accurately, and need very few repeated experiences of this before the word is stored in such a way that they can read it without overt sound-blending. They should demonstrate understanding of figurative language, distinguish shades of meaning among related words and use age-appropriate, academic vocabulary.

As in key stage 1, however, pupils who are still struggling to decode need to be taught to do this urgently through a rigorous and systematic phonics programme so that they catch up rapidly with their peers. If they cannot decode independently and fluently, they will find it increasingly difficult to understand what they read and to write down what they want to say. As far as possible, however, these pupils should follow the year 3 and 4 programme

## English

of study in terms of listening to new books, hearing and learning new vocabulary and grammatical structures, and discussing these.

Specific requirements for pupils to discuss what they are learning and to develop their wider skills in spoken language form part of this programme of study. In years 3 and 4, pupils should become more familiar with and confident in using language in a greater variety of situations, for a variety of audiences and purposes, including through drama, formal presentations and debate.

## Years 3 and 4 programme of study

### Reading – word reading

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- apply their growing knowledge of root words, prefixes and suffixes (etymology and morphology) as listed in [English Appendix 1](#), both to read aloud and to understand the meaning of new words they meet
- read further exception words, noting the unusual correspondences between spelling and sound, and where these occur in the word.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

At this stage, teaching comprehension should be taking precedence over teaching word reading directly. Any focus on word reading should support the development of vocabulary.

When pupils are taught to read longer words, they should be supported to test out different pronunciations. They will attempt to match what they decode to words they may have already heard but may not have seen in print [for example, in reading 'technical', the pronunciation /tɛtʃnɪkəl/ ('tetchnical') might not sound familiar, but /tɛknɪkəl/ ('teknical') should].

### Reading – comprehension

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - reading books that are structured in different ways and reading for a range of purposes
  - using dictionaries to check the meaning of words that they have read
  - increasing their familiarity with a wide range of books, including fairy stories, myths and legends, and retelling some of these orally
  - identifying themes and conventions in a wide range of books

### Statutory requirements

- preparing poems and play scripts to read aloud and to perform, showing understanding through intonation, tone, volume and action
- discussing words and phrases that capture the reader's interest and imagination
- recognising some different forms of poetry [for example, free verse, narrative poetry]
- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
  - asking questions to improve their understanding of a text
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
  - identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these
  - identifying how language, structure, and presentation contribute to meaning
- retrieve and record information from non-fiction
- participate in discussion about both books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

The focus should continue to be on pupils' comprehension as a primary element in reading. The knowledge and skills that pupils need in order to comprehend are very similar at different ages. This is why the programmes of study for comprehension in years 3 and 4 and years 5 and 6 are similar: the complexity of the writing increases the level of challenge.

Pupils should be taught to recognise themes in what they read, such as the triumph of good over evil or the use of magical devices in fairy stories and folk tales.

They should also learn the conventions of different types of writing (for example, the greeting in letters, a diary written in the first person or the use of presentational devices such as numbering and headings in instructions).

Pupils should be taught to use the skills they have learnt earlier and continue to apply these skills to read for different reasons, including for pleasure, or to find out information and the meaning of new words.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should continue to have opportunities to listen frequently to stories, poems, non-fiction and other writing, including whole books and not just extracts, so that they build on what was taught previously. In this way, they also meet books and authors that they might not choose themselves. Pupils should also have opportunities to exercise choice in selecting books and be taught how to do so, with teachers making use of any library services and expertise to support this.

Reading, re-reading, and rehearsing poems and plays for presentation and performance give pupils opportunities to discuss language, including vocabulary, extending their interest in the meaning and origin of words. Pupils should be encouraged to use drama approaches to understand how to perform plays and poems to support their understanding of the meaning. These activities also provide them with an incentive to find out what expression is required, so feeding into comprehension.

In using non-fiction, pupils should know what information they need to look for before they begin and be clear about the task. They should be shown how to use contents pages and indexes to locate information.

Pupils should have guidance about the kinds of explanations and questions that are expected from them. They should help to develop, agree on, and evaluate rules for effective discussion. The expectation should be that all pupils take part.

## Writing – transcription

### Statutory requirements

#### Spelling (see [English Appendix 1](#))

Pupils should be taught to:

- use further prefixes and suffixes and understand how to add them (English Appendix 1)
- spell further homophones
- spell words that are often misspelt (English Appendix 1)
- place the possessive apostrophe accurately in words with regular plurals [for example, girls', boys'] and in words with irregular plurals [for example, children's]
- use the first two or three letters of a word to check its spelling in a dictionary
- write from memory simple sentences, dictated by the teacher, that include words and punctuation taught so far.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should learn to spell new words correctly and have plenty of practice in spelling them.

As in years 1 and 2, pupils should continue to be supported in understanding and applying the concepts of word structure (see [English Appendix 2](#)).

Pupils need sufficient knowledge of spelling in order to use dictionaries efficiently.

### Statutory requirements

#### Handwriting

Pupils should be taught to:

- use the diagonal and horizontal strokes that are needed to join letters and understand which letters, when adjacent to one another, are best left unjoined
- increase the legibility, consistency and quality of their handwriting [for example, by ensuring that the downstrokes of letters are parallel and equidistant; that lines of writing are spaced sufficiently so that the ascenders and descenders of letters do not touch].

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be using joined handwriting throughout their independent writing.

Handwriting should continue to be taught, with the aim of increasing the fluency with which pupils are able to write down what they want to say. This, in turn, will support their composition and spelling.

## Writing – composition

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- plan their writing by:
  - discussing writing similar to that which they are planning to write in order to understand and learn from its structure, vocabulary and grammar
  - discussing and recording ideas
- draft and write by:
  - composing and rehearsing sentences orally (including dialogue), progressively building a varied and rich vocabulary and an increasing range of sentence structures ([English Appendix 2](#))
  - organising paragraphs around a theme
  - in narratives, creating settings, characters and plot
  - in non-narrative material, using simple organisational devices [for example, headings and sub-headings]
- evaluate and edit by:
  - assessing the effectiveness of their own and others' writing and suggesting improvements
  - proposing changes to grammar and vocabulary to improve consistency, including the accurate use of pronouns in sentences
- proof-read for spelling and punctuation errors
- read aloud their own writing, to a group or the whole class, using appropriate intonation and controlling the tone and volume so that the meaning is clear.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should continue to have opportunities to write for a range of real purposes and audiences as part of their work across the curriculum. These purposes and audiences should underpin the decisions about the form the writing should take, such as a narrative, an explanation or a description.

Pupils should understand, through being shown these, the skills and processes that are essential for writing: that is, thinking aloud to explore and collect ideas, drafting, and re-reading to check their meaning is clear, including doing so as the writing develops. Pupils should be taught to monitor whether their own writing makes sense in the same way that they monitor their reading, checking at different levels.



**Writing – vocabulary, grammar and punctuation****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop their understanding of the concepts set out in [English Appendix 2](#) by:
  - extending the range of sentences with more than one clause by using a wider range of conjunctions, including when, if, because, although
  - using the present perfect form of verbs in contrast to the past tense
  - choosing nouns or pronouns appropriately for clarity and cohesion and to avoid repetition
  - using conjunctions, adverbs and prepositions to express time and cause
  - using fronted adverbials
  - learning the grammar for years 3 and 4 in English Appendix 2
- indicate grammatical and other features by:
  - using commas after fronted adverbials
  - indicating possession by using the possessive apostrophe with plural nouns
  - using and punctuating direct speech
- use and understand the grammatical terminology in English Appendix 2 accurately and appropriately when discussing their writing and reading.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Grammar should be taught explicitly: pupils should be taught the terminology and concepts set out in English Appendix 2, and be able to apply them correctly to examples of real language, such as their own writing or books that they have read.

At this stage, pupils should start to learn about some of the differences between Standard English and non-Standard English and begin to apply what they have learnt [for example, in writing dialogue for characters].

## Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6

By the beginning of year 5, pupils should be able to read aloud a wider range of poetry and books written at an age-appropriate interest level with accuracy and at a reasonable speaking pace. They should be able to read most words effortlessly and to work out how to pronounce unfamiliar written words with increasing automaticity. If the pronunciation sounds unfamiliar, they should ask for help in determining both the meaning of the word and how to pronounce it correctly.

They should be able to prepare readings, with appropriate intonation to show their understanding, and should be able to summarise and present a familiar story in their own words. They should be reading widely and frequently, outside as well as in school, for pleasure and information. They should be able to read silently, with good understanding, inferring the meanings of unfamiliar words, and then discuss what they have read.

Pupils should be able to write down their ideas quickly. Their grammar and punctuation should be broadly accurate. Pupils' spelling of most words taught so far should be accurate and they should be able to spell words that they have not yet been taught by using what they have learnt about how spelling works in English.

During years 5 and 6, teachers should continue to emphasise pupils' enjoyment and understanding of language, especially vocabulary, to support their reading and writing. Pupils' knowledge of language, gained from stories, plays, poetry, non-fiction and textbooks, will support their increasing fluency as readers, their facility as writers, and their comprehension. As in years 3 and 4, pupils should be taught to enhance the effectiveness of their writing as well as their competence.

It is essential that pupils whose decoding skills are poor are taught through a rigorous and systematic phonics programme so that they catch up rapidly with their peers in terms of their decoding and spelling. However, as far as possible, these pupils should follow the upper key stage 2 programme of study in terms of listening to books and other writing that they have not come across before, hearing and learning new vocabulary and grammatical structures, and having a chance to talk about all of these.

By the end of year 6, pupils' reading and writing should be sufficiently fluent and effortless for them to manage the general demands of the curriculum in year 7, across all subjects and not just in English, but there will continue to be a need for pupils to learn subject-specific vocabulary. They should be able to reflect their understanding of the audience for and purpose of their writing by selecting appropriate vocabulary and grammar. Teachers should prepare pupils for secondary education by ensuring that they can consciously control sentence structure in their writing and understand why sentences are constructed as they are. Pupils should understand nuances in vocabulary choice and age-appropriate, academic vocabulary. This involves consolidation, practice and discussion of language.

## English

Specific requirements for pupils to discuss what they are learning and to develop their wider skills in spoken language form part of this programme of study. In years 5 and 6, pupils' confidence, enjoyment and mastery of language should be extended through public speaking, performance and debate.

## Years 5 and 6 programme of study

### Reading – word reading

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- apply their growing knowledge of root words, prefixes and suffixes (morphology and etymology), as listed in [English Appendix 1](#), both to read aloud and to understand the meaning of new words that they meet.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

At this stage, there should be no need for further direct teaching of word reading skills for almost all pupils. If pupils are struggling or failing in this, the reasons for this should be investigated. It is imperative that pupils are taught to read during their last two years at primary school if they enter year 5 not being able to do so.

Pupils should be encouraged to work out any unfamiliar word. They should focus on all the letters in a word so that they do not, for example, read 'invitation' for 'imitation' simply because they might be more familiar with the first word. Accurate reading of individual words, which might be key to the meaning of a sentence or paragraph, improves comprehension.

When teachers are reading with or to pupils, attention should be paid to new vocabulary – both a word's meaning(s) and its correct pronunciation.

### Reading – comprehension

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- maintain positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - continuing to read and discuss an increasingly wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - reading books that are structured in different ways and reading for a range of purposes
  - increasing their familiarity with a wide range of books, including myths, legends and traditional stories, modern fiction, fiction from our literary heritage, and books from other cultures and traditions

### Statutory requirements

- recommending books that they have read to their peers, giving reasons for their choices
- identifying and discussing themes and conventions in and across a wide range of writing
- making comparisons within and across books
- learning a wider range of poetry by heart
- preparing poems and plays to read aloud and to perform, showing understanding through intonation, tone and volume so that the meaning is clear to an audience
- understand what they read by:
  - checking that the book makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and exploring the meaning of words in context
  - asking questions to improve their understanding
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
  - summarising the main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph, identifying key details that support the main ideas
  - identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning
- discuss and evaluate how authors use language, including figurative language, considering the impact on the reader
- distinguish between statements of fact and opinion
- retrieve, record and present information from non-fiction
- participate in discussions about books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, building on their own and others' ideas and challenging views courteously
- explain and discuss their understanding of what they have read, including through formal presentations and debates, maintaining a focus on the topic and using notes where necessary
- provide reasoned justifications for their views.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Even though pupils can now read independently, reading aloud to them should include whole books so that they meet books and authors that they might not choose to read themselves.

The knowledge and skills that pupils need in order to comprehend are very similar at different ages. Pupils should continue to apply what they have already learnt to more complex writing.

Pupils should be taught to recognise themes in what they read, such as loss or heroism. They should have opportunities to compare characters, consider different accounts of the same event and discuss viewpoints (both of authors and of fictional characters), within a text and across more than one text.

They should continue to learn the conventions of different types of writing, such as the use of the first person in writing diaries and autobiographies.

Pupils should be taught the technical and other terms needed for discussing what they hear and read, such as metaphor, simile, analogy, imagery, style and effect.

In using reference books, pupils need to know what information they need to look for before they begin and need to understand the task. They should be shown how to use contents pages and indexes to locate information.

The skills of information retrieval that are taught should be applied, for example, in reading history, geography and science textbooks, and in contexts where pupils are genuinely motivated to find out information, for example, reading information leaflets before a gallery or museum visit or reading a theatre programme or review. Teachers should consider making use of any library services and expertise to support this.

Pupils should have guidance about and feedback on the quality of their explanations and contributions to discussions.

Pupils should be shown how to compare characters, settings, themes and other aspects of what they read.

## Writing – transcription

### Statutory requirements

#### Spelling (see [English Appendix 1](#))

Pupils should be taught to:

- use further prefixes and suffixes and understand the guidance for adding them
- spell some words with ‘silent’ letters [for example, knight, psalm, solemn]
- continue to distinguish between homophones and other words which are often confused
- use knowledge of morphology and etymology in spelling and understand that the spelling of some words needs to be learnt specifically, as listed in English Appendix 1
- use dictionaries to check the spelling and meaning of words
- use the first three or four letters of a word to check spelling, meaning or both of these in a dictionary
- use a thesaurus.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

As in earlier years, pupils should continue to be taught to understand and apply the concepts of word structure so that they can draw on their knowledge of morphology and etymology to spell correctly.

### Statutory requirements

#### Writing – handwriting and presentation

Pupils should be taught to:

- write legibly, fluently and with increasing speed by:
  - choosing which shape of a letter to use when given choices and deciding whether or not to join specific letters
  - choosing the writing implement that is best suited for a task.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should continue to practise handwriting and be encouraged to increase the speed of it, so that problems with forming letters do not get in the way of their writing down what they want to say. They should be clear about what standard of handwriting is appropriate for a particular task, for example, quick notes or a final handwritten version. They should also be taught to use an unjoined style, for example, for labelling a diagram or data, writing an email address, or for algebra and capital letters, for example, for filling in a form.

## Writing – composition

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- plan their writing by:
  - identifying the audience for and purpose of the writing, selecting the appropriate form and using other similar writing as models for their own
  - noting and developing initial ideas, drawing on reading and research where necessary
  - in writing narratives, considering how authors have developed characters and settings in what pupils have read, listened to or seen performed
- draft and write by:
  - selecting appropriate grammar and vocabulary, understanding how such choices can change and enhance meaning
  - in narratives, describing settings, characters and atmosphere and integrating dialogue to convey character and advance the action
  - précising longer passages
  - using a wide range of devices to build cohesion within and across paragraphs
  - using further organisational and presentational devices to structure text and to guide the reader [for example, headings, bullet points, underlining]
- evaluate and edit by:
  - assessing the effectiveness of their own and others' writing
  - proposing changes to vocabulary, grammar and punctuation to enhance effects and clarify meaning
  - ensuring the consistent and correct use of tense throughout a piece of writing
  - ensuring correct subject and verb agreement when using singular and plural, distinguishing between the language of speech and writing and choosing the appropriate register
- proof-read for spelling and punctuation errors



### Statutory requirements

- perform their own compositions, using appropriate intonation, volume, and movement so that meaning is clear.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should understand, through being shown, the skills and processes essential for writing: that is, thinking aloud to generate ideas, drafting, and re-reading to check that the meaning is clear.

## Writing – vocabulary, grammar and punctuation

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop their understanding of the concepts set out in [English Appendix 2](#) by:
  - recognising vocabulary and structures that are appropriate for formal speech and writing, including subjunctive forms
  - using passive verbs to affect the presentation of information in a sentence
  - using the perfect form of verbs to mark relationships of time and cause
  - using expanded noun phrases to convey complicated information concisely
  - using modal verbs or adverbs to indicate degrees of possibility
  - using relative clauses beginning with who, which, where, when, whose, that or with an implied (i.e. omitted) relative pronoun
  - learning the grammar for years 5 and 6 in English Appendix 2
- indicate grammatical and other features by:
  - using commas to clarify meaning or avoid ambiguity in writing
  - using hyphens to avoid ambiguity
  - using brackets, dashes or commas to indicate parenthesis
  - using semi-colons, colons or dashes to mark boundaries between independent clauses
  - using a colon to introduce a list
  - punctuating bullet points consistently
- use and understand the grammatical terminology in English Appendix 2 accurately and appropriately in discussing their writing and reading.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should continue to add to their knowledge of linguistic terms, including those to describe grammar, so that they can discuss their writing and reading.

## English Appendix 1: Spelling

Most people read words more accurately than they spell them. The younger pupils are, the truer this is.

By the end of year 1, pupils should be able to read a large number of different words containing the GPCs that they have learnt, whether or not they have seen these words before. Spelling, however, is a very different matter. Once pupils have learnt more than one way of spelling particular sounds, choosing the right letter or letters depends on their either having made a conscious effort to learn the words or having absorbed them less consciously through their reading. Younger pupils have not had enough time to learn or absorb the accurate spelling of all the words that they may want to write.

This appendix provides examples of words embodying each pattern which is taught. Many of the words listed as 'example words' for years 1 and 2, including almost all those listed as 'exception words', are used frequently in pupils' writing, and therefore it is worth pupils learning the correct spelling. The 'exception words' contain GPCs which have not yet been taught as widely applicable, but this may be because they are applicable in very few age-appropriate words rather than because they are rare in English words in general.

The word-lists for years 3 and 4 and years 5 and 6 are statutory. The lists are a mixture of words pupils frequently use in their writing and those which they often misspell. Some of the listed words may be thought of as quite challenging, but the 100 words in each list can easily be taught within the four years of key stage 2 alongside other words that teachers consider appropriate.

The rules and guidance are intended to support the teaching of spelling. Phonic knowledge should continue to underpin spelling after key stage 1; teachers should still draw pupils' attention to GPCs that do and do not fit in with what has been taught so far. Increasingly, however, pupils also need to understand the role of morphology and etymology. Although particular GPCs in root words simply have to be learnt, teachers can help pupils to understand relationships between meaning and spelling where these are relevant. For example, understanding the relationship between *medical* and *medicine* may help pupils to spell the /s/ sound in *medicine* with the letter 'c'. Pupils can also be helped to spell words with prefixes and suffixes correctly if they understand some general principles for adding them. Teachers should be familiar with what pupils have been taught about spelling in earlier years, such as which rules pupils have been taught for adding prefixes and suffixes.

**In this spelling appendix, the left-hand column is statutory; the middle and right-hand columns are non-statutory guidance.**

The International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) is used to represent sounds (phonemes). A table showing the IPA is provided in this document.

## Spelling – work for year 1

### Revision of reception work

#### Statutory requirements

The boundary between revision of work covered in Reception and the introduction of new work may vary according to the programme used, but basic revision should include:

- all letters of the alphabet and the sounds which they most commonly represent
- consonant digraphs which have been taught and the sounds which they represent
- vowel digraphs which have been taught and the sounds which they represent
- the process of segmenting spoken words into sounds before choosing graphemes to represent the sounds
- words with adjacent consonants
- guidance and rules which have been taught

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
The sounds /f/, /l/, /s/, /z/ and /k/ spelt ff, ll, ss, zz and ck	The /f/, /l/, /s/, /z/ and /k/ sounds are usually spelt as <b>ff</b> , <b>ll</b> , <b>ss</b> , <b>zz</b> and <b>ck</b> if they come straight after a single vowel letter in short words. <b>Exceptions:</b> if, pal, us, bus, yes.	off, well, miss, buzz, back
The /ŋ/ sound spelt n before k		bank, think, honk, sunk
Division of words into syllables	Each syllable is like a 'beat' in the spoken word. Words of more than one syllable often have an unstressed syllable in which the vowel sound is unclear.	pocket, rabbit, carrot, thunder, sunset

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
-tch	The /tʃ/ sound is usually spelt as <b>tch</b> if it comes straight after a single vowel letter. <b>Exceptions:</b> rich, which, much, such.	catch, fetch, kitchen, notch, hutch
The /v/ sound at the end of words	English words hardly ever end with the letter <b>v</b> , so if a word ends with a /v/ sound, the letter <b>e</b> usually needs to be added after the 'v'.	have, live, give
Adding s and es to words (plural of nouns and the third person singular of verbs)	If the ending sounds like /s/ or /z/, it is spelt as <b>-s</b> . If the ending sounds like /ɪz/ and forms an extra syllable or 'beat' in the word, it is spelt as <b>-es</b> .	cats, dogs, spends, rocks, thanks, catches
Adding the endings -ing, -ed and -er to verbs where no change is needed to the root word	<b>-ing</b> and <b>-er</b> always add an extra syllable to the word and <b>-ed</b> sometimes does. The past tense of some verbs may sound as if it ends in /ɪd/ (extra syllable), /d/ or /t/ (no extra syllable), but all these endings are spelt <b>-ed</b> . If the verb ends in two consonant letters (the same or different), the ending is simply added on.	hunting, hunted, hunter, buzzing, buzzed, buzzer, jumping, jumped, jumper
Adding -er and -est to adjectives where no change is needed to the root word	As with verbs (see above), if the adjective ends in two consonant letters (the same or different), the ending is simply added on.	grander, grandest, fresher, freshest, quicker, quickest

## Vowel digraphs and trigraphs

Some may already be known, depending on the programmes used in Reception, but some will be new.

Vowel digraphs and trigraphs	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
ai, oi	The digraphs ai and oi are virtually never used at the end of English words.	rain, wait, train, paid, afraid oil, join, coin, point, soil
ay, oy	<b>ay</b> and <b>oy</b> are used for those sounds at the end of words and at the end of syllables.	day, play, say, way, stay boy, toy, enjoy, annoy
a–e		made, came, same, take, safe
e–e		these, theme, complete
i–e		five, ride, like, time, side
o–e		home, those, woke, hope, hole
u–e	Both the /u:/ and /ju:/ ('oo' and 'yoo') sounds can be spelt as <b>u–e</b> .	June, rule, rude, use, tube, tune
ar		car, start, park, arm, garden
ee		see, tree, green, meet, week
ea (/i:/)		sea, dream, meat, each, read (present tense)
ea (/ɛ/)		head, bread, meant, instead, read (past tense)
er (/ɜ:/)		(stressed sound): her, term, verb, person
er (/ə/)		(unstressed <i>schwa</i> sound): better, under, summer, winter, sister
ir		girl, bird, shirt, first, third
ur		turn, hurt, church, burst, Thursday

Vowel digraphs and trigraphs	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
oo (/u:/)	Very few words end with the letters <b>oo</b> , although the few that do are often words that primary children in year 1 will encounter, for example, <i>zoo</i>	food, pool, moon, zoo, soon
oo (/ʊ/)		book, took, foot, wood, good
oa	The digraph <b>oa</b> is very rare at the end of an English word.	boat, coat, road, coach, goal
oe		toe, goes
ou	The only common English word ending in <b>ou</b> is <i>you</i> .	out, about, mouth, around, sound
ow (/aʊ/) ow (/əʊ/) ue ew	Both the /u:/ and /ju:/ ('oo' and 'yoo') sounds can be spelt as <b>u-e</b> , <b>ue</b> and <b>ew</b> . If words end in the /oo/ sound, <b>ue</b> and <b>ew</b> are more common spellings than <b>oo</b> .	now, how, brown, down, town own, blow, snow, grow, show blue, clue, true, rescue, Tuesday new, few, grew, flew, drew, threw
ie (/aɪ/)		lie, tie, pie, cried, tried, dried
ie (/i:/)		chief, field, thief
igh		high, night, light, bright, right
or		for, short, born, horse, morning
ore		more, score, before, wore, shore
aw		saw, draw, yawn, crawl
au		author, August, dinosaur, astronaut
air		air, fair, pair, hair, chair
ear		dear, hear, beard, near, year
ear (/ɛə/)		bear, pear, wear
are (/ɛə/)		bare, dare, care, share, scared

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Words ending –y (/i:/ or /ɪ/)		very, happy, funny, party, family
New consonant spellings ph and wh	The /f/ sound is not usually spelt as <b>ph</b> in short everyday words (e.g. <i>fat</i> , <i>fill</i> , <i>fun</i> ).	dolphin, alphabet, phonics, elephant when, where, which, wheel, while
Using k for the /k/ sound	The /k/ sound is spelt as <b>k</b> rather than as <b>c</b> before <b>e</b> , <b>i</b> and <b>y</b> .	Kent, sketch, kit, skin, frisky
Adding the prefix –un	The prefix <b>un–</b> is added to the beginning of a word without any change to the spelling of the root word.	unhappy, undo, unload, unfair, unlock
Compound words	Compound words are two words joined together. Each part of the longer word is spelt as it would be if it were on its own.	football, playground, farmyard, bedroom, blackberry
Common exception words	Pupils' attention should be drawn to the grapheme-phoneme correspondences that do and do not fit in with what has been taught so far.	the, a, do, to, today, of, said, says, are, were, was, is, his, has, I, you, your, they, be, he, me, she, we, no, go, so, by, my, here, there, where, love, come, some, one, once, ask, friend, school, put, push, pull, full, house, our – and/or others, according to the programme used

## Spelling – work for year 2

### Revision of work from year 1

As words with new GPCs are introduced, many previously-taught GPCs can be revised at the same time as these words will usually contain them.

### New work for year 2

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
The /dʒ/ sound spelt as ge and dge at the end of words, and sometimes spelt as g elsewhere in words before e, i and y	<p>The letter j is never used for the /dʒ/ sound at the end of English words.</p> <p>At the end of a word, the /dʒ/ sound is spelt <b>–dge</b> straight after the /æ/, /ɛ/, /ɪ/, /ɒ/, /ʌ/ and /ʊ/ sounds (sometimes called ‘short’ vowels).</p> <p>After all other sounds, whether vowels or consonants, the /dʒ/ sound is spelt as <b>–ge</b> at the end of a word.</p> <p>In other positions in words, the /dʒ/ sound is often (but not always) spelt as g before e, i, and y. The /dʒ/ sound is always spelt as j before a, o and u.</p>	<p>badge, edge, bridge, dodge, fudge</p> <p>age, huge, change, charge, bulge, village</p> <p>gem, giant, magic, giraffe, energy jacket, jar, jog, join, adjust</p>
The /s/ sound spelt c before e, i and y		race, ice, cell, city, fancy
The /n/ sound spelt kn and (less often) gn at the beginning of words	The ‘k’ and ‘g’ at the beginning of these words was sounded hundreds of years ago.	knock, know, knee, gnat, gnaw
The /r/ sound spelt wr at the beginning of words	This spelling probably also reflects an old pronunciation.	write, written, wrote, wrong, wrap
The // or /əl/ sound spelt –le at the end of words	The <b>–le</b> spelling is the most common spelling for this sound at the end of words.	table, apple, bottle, little, middle



Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
The // or /ə/ sound spelt –el at the end of words	The <b>–el</b> spelling is much less common than <b>–le</b> . The <b>–el</b> spelling is used after <b>m, n, r, s, v, w</b> and more often than not after <b>s</b> .	camel, tunnel, squirrel, travel, towel, tinsel
The // or /ə/ sound spelt –al at the end of words	Not many nouns end in <b>–al</b> , but many adjectives do.	metal, pedal, capital, hospital, animal
Words ending –il	There are not many of these words.	pencil, fossil, nostril
The /aɪ/ sound spelt –y at the end of words	This is by far the most common spelling for this sound at the end of words.	cry, fly, dry, try, reply, July
Adding –es to nouns and verbs ending in –y	The <b>y</b> is changed to <b>i</b> before <b>–es</b> is added.	flies, tries, replies, copies, babies, carries
Adding –ed, –ing, –er and –est to a root word ending in –y with a consonant before it	The <b>y</b> is changed to <b>i</b> before <b>–ed, –er</b> and <b>–est</b> are added, but not before <b>–ing</b> as this would result in <b>ii</b> . The only ordinary words with <b>ii</b> are <i>skiing</i> and <i>taxiing</i> .	copied, copier, happier, happiest, cried, replied ... <b>but</b> copying, crying, replying
Adding the endings –ing, –ed, –er, –est and –y to words ending in –e with a consonant before it	The <b>–e</b> at the end of the root word is dropped before <b>–ing, –ed, –er, –est, –y</b> or any other suffix beginning with a vowel letter is added. <b>Exception:</b> <i>being</i> .	hiking, hiked, hiker, nicer, nicest, shiny
Adding –ing, –ed, –er, –est and –y to words of one syllable ending in a single consonant letter after a single vowel letter	The last consonant letter of the root word is doubled to keep the /æ/, /ɛ/, /ɪ/, /ɒ/ and /ʌ/ sound (i.e. to keep the vowel ‘short’). <b>Exception:</b> The letter ‘x’ is never doubled: <i>mixing, mixed, boxer, sixes</i> .	patting, patted, humming, hummed, dropping, dropped, sadder, saddest, fatter, fattest, runner, runny
The /ɔ:/ sound spelt a before I and II	The /ɔ:/ sound (‘or’) is usually spelt as <b>a</b> before <b>I</b> and <b>II</b> .	all, ball, call, walk, talk, always
The /ʌ/ sound spelt o		other, mother, brother, nothing, Monday

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
The /i:/ sound spelt –ey	The plural of these words is formed by the addition of <b>–s</b> ( <i>donkeys, monkeys, etc.</i> ).	key, donkey, monkey, chimney, valley
The /ɒ/ sound spelt a after w and qu	<b>a</b> is the most common spelling for the /ɒ/ ('hot') sound after <b>w</b> and <b>qu</b> .	want, watch, wander, quantity, squash
The /ɜ:/ sound spelt or after w	There are not many of these words.	word, work, worm, world, worth
The /ɔ:/ sound spelt ar after w	There are not many of these words.	war, warm, towards
The /z/ sound spelt s		television, treasure, usual
The suffixes –ment, –ness, –ful, –less and –ly	<p>If a suffix starts with a consonant letter, it is added straight on to most root words without any change to the last letter of those words.</p> <p><b>Exceptions:</b></p> <p>(1) <i>argument</i></p> <p>(2) root words ending in <b>–y</b> with a consonant before it but only if the root word has more than one syllable.</p>	<p>enjoyment, sadness, careful, playful, hopeless, plainness (plain + ness), badly</p> <p>merriment, happiness, plentiful, penniless, happily</p>
Contractions	<p>In contractions, the apostrophe shows where a letter or letters would be if the words were written in full (e.g. <i>can't – cannot</i>).</p> <p><i>It's</i> means <i>it is</i> (e.g. <i>It's raining</i>) or sometimes <i>it has</i> (e.g. <i>It's been raining</i>), but <i>it's</i> is never used for the possessive.</p>	can't, didn't, hasn't, couldn't, it's, I'll
The possessive apostrophe (singular nouns)		Megan's, Ravi's, the girl's, the child's, the man's
Words ending in –tion		station, fiction, motion, national, section

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Homophones and near-homophones	It is important to know the difference in meaning between homophones.	there/their/they're, here/hear, quite/quiet, see/sea, bare/bear, one/won, sun/son, to/too/two, be/bee, blue/blew, night/knight
Common exception words	<p>Some words are exceptions in some accents but not in others – e.g. <i>past</i>, <i>last</i>, <i>fast</i>, <i>path</i> and <i>bath</i> are not exceptions in accents where the <b>a</b> in these words is pronounced /æ/, as in <i>cat</i>.</p> <p><i>Great</i>, <i>break</i> and <i>steak</i> are the only common words where the /eɪ/ sound is spelt <b>ea</b>.</p>	<p>door, floor, poor, because, find, kind, mind, behind, child, children*, wild, climb, most, only, both, old, cold, gold, hold, told, every, everybody, even, great, break, steak, pretty, beautiful, after, fast, last, past, father, class, grass, pass, plant, path, bath, hour, move, prove, improve, sure, sugar, eye, could, should, would, who, whole, any, many, clothes, busy, people, water, again, half, money, Mr, Mrs, parents, Christmas – and/or others according to programme used.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 'children' is not an exception to what has been taught so far but is included because of its relationship with 'child'.</p>

## Spelling – work for years 3 and 4

### Revision of work from years 1 and 2

Pay special attention to the rules for adding suffixes.

### New work for years 3 and 4

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Adding suffixes beginning with vowel letters to words of more than one syllable	If the last syllable of a word is stressed and ends with one consonant letter which has just one vowel letter before it, the final consonant letter is doubled before any ending beginning with a vowel letter is added. The consonant letter is not doubled if the syllable is unstressed.	forgetting, forgotten, beginning, beginner, prefer, preferred  gardening, gardener, limiting, limited, limitation
The /ɪ/ sound spelt y elsewhere than at the end of words	These words should be learnt as needed.	myth, gym, Egypt, pyramid, mystery
The /ʌ/ sound spelt ou	These words should be learnt as needed.	young, touch, double, trouble, country
More prefixes	<p>Most prefixes are added to the beginning of root words without any changes in spelling, but see <b>in-</b> below.</p> <p>Like <b>un-</b>, the prefixes <b>dis-</b> and <b>mis-</b> have negative meanings.</p> <p>The prefix <b>in-</b> can mean both 'not' and 'in'/'into'. In the words given here it means 'not'.</p>	<p><b>dis-</b>: disappoint, disagree, disobey</p> <p><b>mis-</b>: misbehave, mislead, misspell (mis + spell)</p> <p><b>in-</b>: inactive, incorrect</p>

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
	<p>Before a root word starting with <b>l</b>, <b>in-</b> becomes <b>il-</b>.</p> <p>Before a root word starting with <b>m</b> or <b>p</b>, <b>in-</b> becomes <b>im-</b>.</p> <p>Before a root word starting with <b>r</b>, <b>in-</b> becomes <b>ir-</b>.</p> <p><b>re-</b> means 'again' or 'back'.</p> <p><b>sub-</b> means 'under'.</p> <p><b>inter-</b> means 'between' or 'among'.</p> <p><b>super-</b> means 'above'.</p> <p><b>anti-</b> means 'against'.</p> <p><b>auto-</b> means 'self' or 'own'.</p>	<p>illegal, illegible</p> <p>immature, immortal, impossible, impatient, imperfect</p> <p>irregular, irrelevant, irresponsible</p> <p><b>re-</b>: redo, refresh, return, reappear, redecorate</p> <p><b>sub-</b>: subdivide, subheading, submarine, submerge</p> <p><b>inter-</b>: interact, intercity, international, interrelated (inter + related)</p> <p><b>super-</b>: supermarket, superman, superstar</p> <p><b>anti-</b>: antiseptic, anti-clockwise, antisocial</p> <p><b>auto-</b>: autobiography, autograph</p>
The suffix <b>-ation</b>	The suffix <b>-ation</b> is added to verbs to form nouns. The rules already learnt still apply.	information, adoration, sensation, preparation, admiration
The suffix <b>-ly</b>	<p>The suffix <b>-ly</b> is added to an adjective to form an adverb. The rules already learnt still apply.</p> <p>The suffix <b>-ly</b> starts with a consonant letter, so it is added straight on to most root words.</p>	sadly, completely, usually (usual + ly), finally (final + ly), comically (comical + ly)

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
	<p><b>Exceptions:</b></p> <p>(1) If the root word ends in –y with a consonant letter before it, the <b>y</b> is changed to <b>i</b>, but only if the root word has more than one syllable.</p> <p>(2) If the root word ends with <b>–le</b>, the <b>–le</b> is changed to <b>–ly</b>.</p> <p>(3) If the root word ends with <b>–ic</b>, <b>–ally</b> is added rather than just <b>–ly</b>, except in the word <i>publicly</i>.</p> <p>(4) The words <i>truly, duly, wholly</i>.</p>	<p>happily, angrily</p> <p>gently, simply, humbly, nobly</p> <p>basically, frantically, dramatically</p>
Words with endings sounding like /ʒə/ or /tʃə/	<p>The ending sounding like /ʒə/ is always spelt <b>–sure</b>.</p> <p>The ending sounding like /tʃə/ is often spelt <b>–ture</b>, but check that the word is not a root word ending in <b>(t)ch</b> with an <b>er</b> ending – e.g. <i>teacher, catcher, richer, stretcher</i>.</p>	<p>measure, treasure, pleasure, enclosure</p> <p>creature, furniture, picture, nature, adventure</p>
Endings which sound like /ʒən/	<p>If the ending sounds like /ʒən/, it is spelt as <b>–sion</b>.</p>	<p>division, invasion, confusion, decision, collision, television</p>
The suffix –ous	<p>Sometimes the root word is obvious and the usual rules apply for adding suffixes beginning with vowel letters.</p> <p>Sometimes there is no obvious root word.</p> <p><b>–our</b> is changed to <b>–or</b> before <b>–ous</b> is added.</p> <p>A final ‘e’ of the root word must be kept if the /dʒ/ sound of ‘g’ is to be kept.</p> <p>If there is an /i:/ sound before the <b>–ous</b> ending, it is usually spelt as <b>i</b>, but a few words have <b>e</b>.</p>	<p>poisonous, dangerous, mountainous, famous, various</p> <p>tremendous, enormous, jealous</p> <p>humorous, glamorous, vigorous</p> <p>courageous, outrageous</p> <p>serious, obvious, curious</p> <p>hideous, spontaneous, courteous</p>

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Endings which sound like /ʃən/, spelt –tion, –sion, –ssion, –cian	<p>Strictly speaking, the suffixes are –<b>ion</b> and –<b>ian</b>. Clues about whether to put <b>t</b>, <b>s</b>, <b>ss</b> or <b>c</b> before these suffixes often come from the last letter or letters of the root word.</p> <p>–<b>tion</b> is the most common spelling. It is used if the root word ends in <b>t</b> or <b>te</b>.</p> <p>–<b>ssion</b> is used if the root word ends in <b>ss</b> or –<b>mit</b>.</p> <p>–<b>sion</b> is used if the root word ends in <b>d</b> or <b>se</b>.</p> <p><b>Exceptions:</b> <i>attend – attention, intend – intention.</i></p> <p>–<b>cian</b> is used if the root word ends in <b>c</b> or <b>cs</b>.</p>	<p>invention, injection, action, hesitation, completion</p> <p>expression, discussion, confession, permission, admission</p> <p>expansion, extension, comprehension, tension</p> <p>musician, electrician, magician, politician, mathematician</p>
Words with the /k/ sound spelt ch (Greek in origin)		scheme, chorus, chemist, echo, character
Words with the /ʃ/ sound spelt ch (mostly French in origin)		chef, chalet, machine, brochure
Words ending with the /g/ sound spelt –gue and the /k/ sound spelt –que (French in origin)		league, tongue, antique, unique
Words with the /s/ sound spelt sc (Latin in origin)	In the Latin words from which these words come, the Romans probably pronounced the <b>c</b> and the <b>k</b> as two sounds rather than one – /s/ /k/.	science, scene, discipline, fascinate, crescent
Words with the /eɪ/ sound spelt ei, eigh, or ey		vein, weigh, eight, neighbour, they, obey

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Possessive apostrophe with plural words	The apostrophe is placed after the plural form of the word; <b>-s</b> is not added if the plural already ends in <b>-s</b> , but <i>is</i> added if the plural does not end in <b>-s</b> (i.e. is an irregular plural – e.g. <i>children's</i> ).	girls', boys', babies', children's, men's, mice's <b>(Note:</b> singular proper nouns ending in an s use the 's suffix e.g. Cyprus's population)
Homophones and near-homophones		accept/except, affect/effect, ball/bawl, berry/bury, brake/break, fair/fare, grate/great, groan/grown, here/hear, heel/heal/he'll, knot/not, mail/male, main/mane, meat/meet, medal/meddle, missed/mist, peace/piece, plain/plane, rain/rein/reign, scene/seen, weather/whether, whose/who's



## Word list – years 3 and 4

accident(ally)	early	knowledge	purpose
actual(ly)	earth	learn	quarter
address	eight/eighth	length	question
answer	enough	library	recent
appear	exercise	material	regular
arrive	experience	medicine	reign
believe	experiment	mention	remember
bicycle	extreme	minute	sentence
breath	famous	natural	separate
breathe	favourite	naughty	special
build	February	notice	straight
busy/business	forward(s)	occasion(ally)	strange
calendar	fruit	often	strength
caught	grammar	opposite	suppose
centre	group	ordinary	surprise
century	guard	particular	therefore
certain	guide	peculiar	though/although
circle	heard	perhaps	thought
complete	heart	popular	through
consider	height	position	various
continue	history	possess(ion)	weight
decide	imagine	possible	woman/women
describe	increase	potatoes	
different	important	pressure	
difficult	interest	probably	
disappear	island	promise	

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Teachers should continue to emphasise to pupils the relationships between sounds and letters, even when the relationships are unusual. Once root words are learnt in this way, longer words can be spelt correctly, if the rules and guidance for adding prefixes and suffixes are also known.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

#### Examples:

*business*: once *busy* is learnt, with due attention to the unusual spelling of the /i/ sound as 'u', *business* can then be spelt as **busy + ness**, with the **y** of **busy** changed to **i** according to the rule.

*disappear*: the root word *appear* contains sounds which can be spelt in more than one way so it needs to be learnt, but the prefix **dis-** is then simply added to **appear**.

Understanding the relationships between words can also help with spelling. Examples:

- *bicycle* is *cycle* (from the Greek for *wheel*) with **bi-** (meaning 'two') before it.
- *medicine* is related to *medical* so the /s/ sound is spelt as **c**.
- *opposite* is related to *oppose*, so the schwa sound in *opposite* is spelt as **o**.

## Spelling – years 5 and 6

Revise work done in previous years

New work for years 5 and 6

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Endings which sound like /ʃəs/ spelt –cious or –tious	<p>Not many common words end like this. If the root word ends in <b>–ce</b>, the /ʃ/ sound is usually spelt as <b>c</b> – e.g. <i>vice</i> – <i>vicious</i>, <i>grace</i> – <i>gracious</i>, <i>space</i> – <i>spacious</i>, <i>malice</i> – <i>malicious</i>.</p> <p><b>Exception:</b> <i>anxious</i>.</p>	<p>vicious, precious, conscious, delicious, malicious, suspicious, ambitious, cautious, fictitious, infectious, nutritious</p>
Endings which sound like /ʃəl/	<p><b>–cial</b> is common after a vowel letter and <b>–tial</b> after a consonant letter, but there are some exceptions.</p> <p><b>Exceptions:</b> initial, financial, commercial, provincial (the spelling of the last three is clearly related to <i>finance</i>, <i>commerce</i> and <i>province</i>).</p>	<p>official, special, artificial, partial, confidential, essential</p>
Words ending in –ant, –ance/–ancy, –ent, –ence/–ency	<p>Use <b>–ant</b> and <b>–ance/–ancy</b> if there is a related word with a /æ/ or /eɪ/ sound in the right position; <b>–ation</b> endings are often a clue.</p> <p>Use <b>–ent</b> and <b>–ence/–ency</b> after soft <b>c</b> (/s/ sound), soft <b>g</b> (/dʒ/ sound) and <b>qu</b>, or if there is a related word with a clear /ɛ/ sound in the right position.</p> <p>There are many words, however, where the above guidance does not help. These words just have to be learnt.</p>	<p>observant, observance, (observ<u>a</u>tion), expectant (expect<u>a</u>tion), hesitant, hesitancy (hesit<u>a</u>tion), tolerant, tolerance (toler<u>a</u>tion), substance (subst<u>a</u>ntial)</p> <p>innocent, innocence, decent, decency, frequent, frequency, confident, confidence (confid<u>e</u>ntial)</p> <p>assistant, assistance, obedient, obedience, independent, independ<u>e</u>nce</p>

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
<p>Words ending in –able and –ible</p> <p>Words ending in –ably and –ibly</p>	<p>The <b>–able/–ably</b> endings are far more common than the <b>–ible/–ibly</b> endings. As with <b>–ant</b> and <b>–ance/–ancy</b>, the <b>–able</b> ending is used if there is a related word ending in <b>–ation</b>.</p> <p>If the <b>–able</b> ending is added to a word ending in <b>–ce</b> or <b>–ge</b>, the <b>e</b> after the <b>c</b> or <b>g</b> must be kept as those letters would otherwise have their ‘hard’ sounds (as in <i>cap</i> and <i>gap</i>) before the <b>a</b> of the <b>–able</b> ending.</p> <p>The <b>–able</b> ending is usually but not always used if a complete root word can be heard before it, even if there is no related word ending in <b>–ation</b>. The first five examples opposite are obvious; in <i>reliable</i>, the complete word <i>rely</i> is heard, but the <b>y</b> changes to <b>i</b> in accordance with the rule.</p> <p>The <b>–ible</b> ending is common if a complete root word can’t be heard before it but it also sometimes occurs when a complete word <i>can</i> be heard (e.g. <i>sensible</i>).</p>	<p>adorable/adorably (adoration),</p> <p>applicable/applicably (application),</p> <p>considerable/considerably (consideration),</p> <p>tolerable/tolerably (toleration)</p> <p>changeable, noticeable, forcible, legible</p> <p>dependable, comfortable, understandable, reasonable, enjoyable, reliable</p> <p>possible/possibly, horrible/horribly, terrible/terribly, visible/visibly, incredible/incredibly, sensible/sensibly</p>
<p>Adding suffixes beginning with vowel letters to words ending in –fer</p>	<p>The <b>r</b> is doubled if the <b>–fer</b> is still stressed when the ending is added.</p> <p>The <b>r</b> is not doubled if the <b>–fer</b> is no longer stressed.</p>	<p>referring, referred, referral, preferring, preferred, transferring, transferred</p> <p>reference, referee, preference, transference</p>
<p>Use of the hyphen</p>	<p>Hyphens can be used to join a prefix to a root word, especially if the prefix ends in a vowel letter and the root word also begins with one.</p>	<p>co-ordinate, re-enter, co-operate, co-own</p>

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Words with the /i:/ sound spelt ei after c	<p>The 'i before e except after c' rule applies to words where the sound spelt by <b>ei</b> is /i:/.</p> <p><b>Exceptions:</b> <i>protein, caffeine, seize</i> (and <i>either</i> and <i>neither</i> if pronounced with an initial /i:/ sound).</p>	deceive, conceive, receive, perceive, ceiling
Words containing the letter-string ough	<p><b>ough</b> is one of the trickiest spellings in English – it can be used to spell a number of different sounds.</p>	ought, bought, thought, nought, brought, fought rough, tough, enough cough though, although, dough through thorough, borough plough, bough
Words with 'silent' letters (i.e. letters whose presence cannot be predicted from the pronunciation of the word)	<p>Some letters which are no longer sounded used to be sounded hundreds of years ago: e.g. in <i>knight</i>, there was a /k/ sound before the /n/, and the <b>gh</b> used to represent the sound that 'ch' now represents in the Scottish word <i>loch</i>.</p>	doubt, island, lamb, solemn, thistle, knight

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Homophones and other words that are often confused	<p>In the pairs of words opposite, nouns end <b>-ce</b> and verbs end <b>-se</b>. <i>Advice</i> and <i>advise</i> provide a useful clue as the word <i>advise</i> (verb) is pronounced with a /z/ sound – which could not be spelt <b>c</b>.</p> <p><u>More examples:</u></p> <p>aisle: a gangway between seats (in a church, train, plane).  isle: an island.  aloud: out loud.  allowed: permitted.  affect: usually a verb (e.g. <i>The weather may affect our plans</i>).  effect: usually a noun (e.g. <i>It may have an effect on our plans</i>). If a verb, it means ‘bring about’ (e.g. <i>He will effect changes in the running of the business</i>).  altar: a table-like piece of furniture in a church.  alter: to change.  ascent: the act of ascending (going up).  assent: to agree/agreement (verb and noun).  bridal: to do with a bride at a wedding.  bridle: reins etc. for controlling a horse.  cereal: made from grain (e.g. breakfast cereal).  serial: adjective from the noun <i>series</i> – a succession of things one after the other.  compliment: to make nice remarks about someone (verb) or the remark that is made (noun).  complement: related to the word <i>complete</i> – to make something complete or more complete (e.g. <i>her scarf complemented her outfit</i>).</p>	<p>advice/advise  device/devise  licence/license  practice/practise  prophecy/prophesy</p> <p>farther: further  father: a male parent  guessed: past tense of the verb <i>guess</i>  guest: visitor  heard: past tense of the verb <i>hear</i>  herd: a group of animals  led: past tense of the verb <i>lead</i>  lead: present tense of that verb, or else the metal which is very heavy (<i>as heavy as lead</i>)  morning: before noon  mourning: grieving for someone who has died  past: noun or adjective referring to a previous time (e.g. <i>In the past</i>) or preposition or adverb showing place (e.g. <i>he walked past me</i>)  passed: past tense of the verb ‘pass’ (e.g. <i>I passed him in the road</i>)  precede: go in front of or before  proceed: go on</p>

Statutory requirements	Rules and guidance (non-statutory)	Example words (non-statutory)
Homophones and other words that are often confused (continued)	<p>descent: the act of descending (going down).</p> <p>dissent: to disagree/disagreement (verb and noun).</p> <p>desert: as a noun – a barren place (stress on first syllable); as a verb – to abandon (stress on second syllable)</p> <p>dessert: (stress on second syllable) a sweet course after the main course of a meal.</p> <p>draft: noun – a first attempt at writing something; verb – to make the first attempt; also, to draw in someone (e.g. <i>to draft in extra help</i>)</p> <p>draught: a current of air.</p>	<p>principal: adjective – most important (e.g. <i>principal ballerina</i>) noun – important person (e.g. <i>principal of a college</i>)</p> <p>principle: basic truth or belief</p> <p>profit: money that is made in selling things</p> <p>prophet: someone who foretells the future</p> <p>stationary: not moving</p> <p>stationery: paper, envelopes etc.</p> <p>steal: take something that does not belong to you</p> <p>steel: metal</p> <p>wary: cautious</p> <p>weary: tired</p> <p>who's: contraction of <i>who is</i> or <i>who has</i></p> <p>whose: belonging to someone (e.g. <i>Whose jacket is that?</i>)</p>

## Word list – years 5 and 6

accommodate	criticise (critic + ise)	individual	relevant
accompany	curiosity	interfere	restaurant
according	definite	interrupt	rhyme
achieve	desperate	language	rhythm
aggressive	determined	leisure	sacrifice
amateur	develop	lightning	secretary
ancient	dictionary	marvellous	shoulder
apparent	disastrous	mischievous	signature
appreciate	embarrass	muscle	sincere(ly)
attached	environment	necessary	soldier
available	equip (–ped, –ment)	neighbour	stomach
average	especially	nuisance	sufficient
awkward	exaggerate	occupy	suggest
bargain	excellent	occur	symbol
bruise	existence	opportunity	system
category	explanation	parliament	temperature
cemetery	familiar	persuade	thorough
committee	foreign	physical	twelfth
communicate	forty	prejudice	variety
community	frequently	privilege	vegetable
competition	government	profession	vehicle
conscience*	guarantee	programme	yacht
conscious*	harass	pronunciation	
controversy	hindrance	queue	
convenience	identity	recognise	
correspond	immediate(ly)	recommend	

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Teachers should continue to emphasise to pupils the relationships between sounds and letters, even when the relationships are unusual. Once root words are learnt in this way, longer words can be spelt correctly if the rules and guidance for adding prefixes and suffixes are also known. Many of the words in the list above can be used for practice in adding suffixes.



### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Understanding the history of words and relationships between them can also help with spelling.

#### Examples:

- *Conscience* and *conscious* are related to *science*: *conscience* is simply *science* with the prefix *con-* added. These words come from the Latin word *scio* meaning *I know*.
- The word *desperate*, meaning 'without hope', is often pronounced in English as *desp'rate*, but the *-sper-* part comes from the Latin *spero*, meaning 'I hope', in which the **e** was clearly sounded.
- *Familiar* is related to *family*, so the /ə/ sound in the first syllable of *familiar* is spelt as **a**.

## International Phonetic Alphabet (non-statutory)

The table below shows each symbol of the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) and provides examples of the associated grapheme(s).<sup>6</sup> The table is not a comprehensive alphabetic code chart; it is intended simply as guidance for teachers in understanding the IPA symbols used in the spelling appendix ([English Appendix 1](#)). The pronunciations in the table are, by convention, based on Received Pronunciation and could be significantly different in other accents.

Consonants		Vowels	
/b/	<b>bad</b>	/ɑ:/	<b>father, arm</b>
/d/	<b>dog</b>	/ɒ/	<b>hot</b>
/ð/	<b>this</b>	/æ/	<b>cat</b>
/dʒ/	<b>gem, jug</b>	/aɪ/	<b>mind, fine, pie, high</b>
/f/	<b>if, puff, photo</b>	/aʊ/	<b>out, cow</b>
/g/	<b>gum</b>	/ɛ/	<b>hen, head</b>
/h/	<b>how</b>	/eɪ/	<b>say, came, bait</b>
/j/	<b>yes</b>	/ɛə/	<b>air</b>
/k/	<b>cat, check, key, school</b>	/əʊ/	<b>cold, boat, cone, blow</b>
/l/	<b>leg, hill</b>	/ɪ/	<b>hit</b>
/m/	<b>man</b>	/ɪə/	<b>beer</b>
/n/	<b>man</b>	/i:/	<b>she, bead, see, scheme, chief</b>
/ŋ/	<b>sing</b>	/ɔ:/	<b>launch, raw, born</b>
/θ/	<b>both</b>	/ɔɪ/	<b>coin, boy</b>
/p/	<b>pet</b>	/ʊ/	<b>book</b>
/r/	<b>red</b>	/ʊə/	<b>tour</b>
/s/	<b>sit, miss, cell</b>	/u:/	<b>room, you, blue, brute</b>
/ʃ/	<b>she, chef</b>	/ʌ/	<b>cup</b>
/t/	<b>tea</b>	/ɜ:/	<b>fern, turn, girl</b>
/tʃ/	<b>check</b>	/ə/	<b>farmer</b>
/v/	<b>vet</b>		
/w/	<b>wet, when</b>		
/z/	<b>zip, hens, buzz</b>		
/ʒ/	<b>pleasure</b>		

<sup>6</sup> This chart is adapted slightly from the version provided on the DfE's website to support the Year 1 phonics screening check.

## English Appendix 2: Vocabulary, grammar and punctuation

The grammar of our first language is learnt naturally and implicitly through interactions with other speakers and from reading. Explicit knowledge of grammar is, however, very important, as it gives us more conscious control and choice in our language. Building this knowledge is best achieved through a focus on grammar within the teaching of reading, writing and speaking. Once pupils are familiar with a grammatical concept [for example 'modal verb'], they should be encouraged to apply and explore this concept in the grammar of their own speech and writing and to note where it is used by others. Young pupils, in particular, use more complex language in speech than in writing, and teachers should build on this, aiming for a smooth transition to sophisticated writing.

The table below focuses on Standard English and should be read in conjunction with the programmes of study as it sets out the statutory requirements. The table shows when concepts should be introduced first, not necessarily when they should be completely understood. It is very important, therefore, that the content in earlier years be revisited in subsequent years to consolidate knowledge and build on pupils' understanding. Teachers should also go beyond the content set out here if they feel it is appropriate.

The grammatical terms that pupils should learn are labelled as 'terminology for pupils'. They should learn to recognise and use the terminology through discussion and practice. All terms in **bold** should be understood with the meanings set out in the [Glossary](#).

## Vocabulary, grammar and punctuation – Years 1 to 6

Year 1: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>Regular <b>plural noun suffixes</b> –s or –es [for example, <i>dog, dogs; wish, wishes</i>], including the effects of these suffixes on the meaning of the noun</p> <p><b>Suffixes</b> that can be added to <b>verbs</b> where no change is needed in the spelling of root words (e.g. <i>helping, helped, helper</i>)</p> <p>How the <b>prefix un–</b> changes the meaning of <b>verbs</b> and <b>adjectives</b> [negation, for example, <i>unkind</i>, or <i>undoing: untie the boat</i>]</p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p>How <b>words</b> can combine to make <b>sentences</b></p> <p>Joining <b>words</b> and joining <b>clauses</b> using <i>and</i></p>
<b>Text</b>	Sequencing <b>sentences</b> to form short narratives
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Separation of <b>words</b> with spaces</p> <p>Introduction to capital letters, full stops, question marks and exclamation marks to demarcate <b>sentences</b></p> <p>Capital letters for names and for the personal <b>pronoun I</b></p>
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>letter, capital letter</p> <p>word, singular, plural</p> <p>sentence</p> <p>punctuation, full stop, question mark, exclamation mark</p>

Year 2: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>Formation of <b>nouns</b> using <b>suffixes</b> such as <i>–ness, –er</i> and by compounding [for example, <i>whiteboard, superman</i>]</p> <p>Formation of <b>adjectives</b> using <b>suffixes</b> such as <i>–ful, –less</i></p> <p>(A fuller list of <b>suffixes</b> can be found on page <a href="#">57</a> in the year 2 spelling section in English Appendix 1)</p> <p>Use of the <b>suffixes</b> <i>–er, –est</i> in <b>adjectives</b> and the use of <i>–ly</i> in Standard English to turn adjectives into <b>adverbs</b></p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p><b>Subordination</b> (using <i>when, if, that, because</i>) and <b>co-ordination</b> (using <i>or, and, but</i>)</p> <p>Expanded <b>noun phrases</b> for description and specification [for example, <i>the blue butterfly, plain flour, the man in the moon</i>]</p> <p><b>How the grammatical patterns in a sentence indicate its function as a statement, question, exclamation or command</b></p>

Year 2: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Text</b>	<p>Correct choice and consistent use of <b>present tense</b> and <b>past tense</b> throughout writing</p> <p>Use of the <b>progressive</b> form of <b>verbs</b> in the <b>present</b> and <b>past tense</b> to mark actions in progress [for example, <i>she is drumming, he was shouting</i>]</p>
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Use of capital letters, full stops, question marks and exclamation marks to demarcate <b>sentences</b></p> <p>Commas to separate items in a list</p> <p><b>Apostrophes</b> to mark where letters are missing in spelling and to mark singular possession in nouns [for example, <i>the girl's name</i>]</p>
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>noun, noun phrase</p> <p>statement, question, exclamation, command</p> <p>compound, suffix</p> <p>adjective, adverb, verb</p> <p>tense (past, present)</p> <p>apostrophe, comma</p>

Year 3: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>Formation of <b>nouns</b> using a range of <b>prefixes</b> [for example <i>super-</i>, <i>anti-</i>, <i>auto-</i>]</p> <p>Use of the <b>forms</b> <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> according to whether the next <b>word</b> begins with a <b>consonant</b> or a <b>vowel</b> [for example, <i>a rock, an open box</i>]</p> <p><b>Word families</b> based on common <b>words</b>, showing how words are related in form and meaning [for example, <i>solve, solution, solver, dissolve, insoluble</i>]</p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p>Expressing time, place and cause using <b>conjunctions</b> [for example, <i>when, before, after, while, so, because</i>], <b>adverbs</b> [for example, <i>then, next, soon, therefore</i>], or <b>prepositions</b> [for example, <i>before, after, during, in, because of</i>]</p>
<b>Text</b>	<p>Introduction to paragraphs as a way to group related material</p> <p>Headings and sub-headings to aid presentation</p> <p>Use of the <b>present perfect</b> form of <b>verbs</b> instead of the simple past [for example, <i>He has gone out to play</i> contrasted with <i>He went out to play</i>]</p>
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Introduction to inverted commas to <b>punctuate</b> direct speech</p>

Year 3: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>preposition, conjunction</p> <p>word family, prefix</p> <p>clause, subordinate clause</p> <p>direct speech</p> <p>consonant, consonant letter vowel, vowel letter</p> <p>inverted commas (or 'speech marks')</p>

Year 4: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>The grammatical difference between <b>plural</b> and <b>possessive –s</b></p> <p>Standard English forms for <b>verb inflections</b> instead of local spoken forms [for example, <i>we were</i> instead of <i>we was</i>, or <i>I did</i> instead of <i>I done</i>]</p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p>Noun phrases expanded by the addition of modifying adjectives, nouns and preposition phrases (e.g. <i>the teacher</i> expanded to: <i>the strict maths teacher with curly hair</i>)</p> <p><b>Fronted adverbials</b> [for example, <i>Later that day, I heard the bad news.</i>]</p>
<b>Text</b>	<p>Use of paragraphs to organise ideas around a theme</p> <p>Appropriate choice of <b>pronoun</b> or <b>noun</b> within and across <b>sentences</b> to aid <b>cohesion</b> and avoid repetition</p>
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Use of inverted commas and other <b>punctuation</b> to indicate direct speech [for example, a comma after the reporting clause; end punctuation within inverted commas: <i>The conductor shouted, "Sit down!"</i>]</p> <p><b>Apostrophes</b> to mark <b>plural</b> possession [for example, <i>the girl's name, the girls' names</i>]</p> <p>Use of commas after <b>fronted adverbials</b></p>
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>determiner</p> <p>pronoun, possessive pronoun</p> <p>adverbial</p>

Year 5: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>Converting <b>nouns</b> or <b>adjectives</b> into <b>verbs</b> using <b>suffixes</b> [for example, <i>-ate; -ise; -ify</i>]</p> <p><b>Verb prefixes</b> [for example, <i>dis-</i>, <i>de-</i>, <i>mis-</i>, <i>over-</i> and <i>re-</i>]</p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p><b>Relative clauses</b> beginning with <i>who</i>, <i>which</i>, <i>where</i>, <i>when</i>, <i>whose</i>, <i>that</i>, or an omitted relative pronoun</p> <p>Indicating degrees of possibility using <b>adverbs</b> [for example, <i>perhaps</i>, <i>surely</i>] or <b>modal verbs</b> [for example, <i>might</i>, <i>should</i>, <i>will</i>, <i>must</i>]</p>
<b>Text</b>	<p>Devices to build <b>cohesion</b> within a paragraph [for example, <i>then</i>, <i>after that</i>, <i>this</i>, <i>firstly</i>]</p> <p>Linking ideas across paragraphs using <b>adverbials</b> of time [for example, <i>later</i>], place [for example, <i>nearby</i>] and number [for example, <i>secondly</i>] or tense choices [for example, he <i>had</i> seen her before]</p>
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Brackets, dashes or commas to indicate parenthesis</p> <p>Use of commas to clarify meaning or avoid ambiguity</p>
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>modal verb, relative pronoun</p> <p>relative clause</p> <p>parenthesis, bracket, dash</p> <p>cohesion, ambiguity</p>

Year 6: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Word</b>	<p>The difference between vocabulary typical of informal speech and vocabulary appropriate for formal speech and writing [for example, <i>find out</i> – <i>discover</i>; <i>ask for</i> – <i>request</i>; <i>go in</i> – <i>enter</i>]</p> <p>How words are related by meaning as synonyms and antonyms [for example, <i>big</i>, <i>large</i>, <i>little</i>].</p>
<b>Sentence</b>	<p>Use of the <b>passive</b> to affect the presentation of information in a <b>sentence</b> [for example, <i>I broke the window in the greenhouse</i> versus <i>The window in the greenhouse was broken (by me)</i>].</p> <p>The difference between structures typical of informal speech and structures appropriate for formal speech and writing [for example, the use of question tags: <i>He's your friend, isn't he?</i>, or the use of <b>subjunctive</b> forms such as <i>If I were</i> or <i>Were they to come</i> in some very formal writing and speech]</p>

Year 6: Detail of content to be introduced (statutory requirement)	
<b>Text</b>	<p>Linking ideas across paragraphs using a wider range of <b>cohesive devices</b>: repetition of a <b>word</b> or phrase, grammatical connections [for example, the use of <b>adverbials</b> such as <i>on the other hand</i>, <i>in contrast</i>, or <i>as a consequence</i>], and <b>ellipsis</b></p> <p>Layout devices [for example, headings, sub-headings, columns, bullets, or tables, to structure text]</p>
<b>Punctuation</b>	<p>Use of the semi-colon, colon and dash to mark the boundary between independent <b>clauses</b> [for example, <i>It's raining; I'm fed up</i>]</p> <p>Use of the colon to introduce a list and use of semi-colons within lists</p> <p><b>Punctuation</b> of bullet points to list information</p> <p>How hyphens can be used to avoid ambiguity [for example, <i>man eating shark</i> versus <i>man-eating shark</i>, or <i>recover</i> versus <i>re-cover</i>]</p>
<b>Terminology for pupils</b>	<p>subject, object</p> <p>active, passive</p> <p>synonym, antonym</p> <p>ellipsis, hyphen, colon, semi-colon, bullet points</p>



## Key stages 3 and 4

### Spoken language

The national curriculum for English reflects the importance of spoken language in pupils' development across the whole curriculum – cognitively, socially and linguistically. Spoken language continues to underpin the development of pupils' reading and writing during key stages 3 and 4 and teachers should therefore ensure pupils' confidence and competence in this area continue to develop. Pupils should be taught to understand and use the conventions for discussion and debate, as well as continuing to develop their skills in working collaboratively with their peers to discuss reading, writing and speech across the curriculum.

### Reading and writing

Reading at key stages 3 and 4 should be wide, varied and challenging. Pupils should be expected to read whole books, to read in depth and to read for pleasure and information.

Pupils should continue to develop their knowledge of and skills in writing, refining their drafting skills and developing resilience to write at length. They should be taught to write formal and academic essays as well as writing imaginatively. They should be taught to write for a variety of purposes and audiences across a range of contexts. This requires an increasingly wide knowledge of vocabulary and grammar.

Opportunities for teachers to enhance pupils' vocabulary will arise naturally from their reading and writing. Teachers should show pupils how to understand the relationships between words, how to understand nuances in meaning, and how to develop their understanding of, and ability to use, figurative language.

Pupils should be taught to control their speaking and writing consciously, understand why sentences are constructed as they are and to use Standard English. They should understand and use age-appropriate vocabulary, including linguistic and literary terminology, for discussing their reading, writing and spoken language. This involves consolidation, practice and discussion of language. It is important that pupils learn the correct grammatical terms in English and that these terms are integrated within teaching.

Teachers should build on the knowledge and skills that pupils have been taught at earlier key stages. Decisions about progression should be based on the security of pupils' linguistic knowledge, skills and understanding and their readiness to progress to the next stage. Pupils whose linguistic development is more advanced should be challenged through being offered opportunities for increased breadth and depth in reading and writing. Those who are less fluent should consolidate their knowledge, understanding and skills, including through additional practice.

## Glossary

A non-statutory Glossary is provided for teachers.

## Key stage 3 subject content

### Reading

Pupils should be taught to:

- develop an appreciation and love of reading, and read increasingly challenging material independently through:
  - reading a wide range of fiction and non-fiction, including in particular whole books, short stories, poems and plays with a wide coverage of genres, historical periods, forms and authors. The range will include high-quality works from:
    - English literature, both pre-1914 and contemporary, including prose, poetry and drama
    - Shakespeare (two plays)
    - seminal world literature
  - choosing and reading books independently for challenge, interest and enjoyment.
  - re-reading books encountered earlier to increase familiarity with them and provide a basis for making comparisons.
- understand increasingly challenging texts through:
  - learning new vocabulary, relating it explicitly to known vocabulary and understanding it with the help of context and dictionaries
  - making inferences and referring to evidence in the text
  - knowing the purpose, audience for and context of the writing and drawing on this knowledge to support comprehension
  - checking their understanding to make sure that what they have read makes sense.
- read critically through:
  - knowing how language, including figurative language, vocabulary choice, grammar, text structure and organisational features, presents meaning
  - recognising a range of poetic conventions and understanding how these have been used
  - studying setting, plot, and characterisation, and the effects of these
  - understanding how the work of dramatists is communicated effectively through performance and how alternative staging allows for different interpretations of a play
  - making critical comparisons across texts
  - studying a range of authors, including at least two authors in depth each year.

### Writing

Pupils should be taught to:

- write accurately, fluently, effectively and at length for pleasure and information through:

## English

- writing for a wide range of purposes and audiences, including:
  - well-structured formal expository and narrative essays
  - stories, scripts, poetry and other imaginative writing
  - notes and polished scripts for talks and presentations
  - a range of other narrative and non-narrative texts, including arguments, and personal and formal letters
- summarising and organising material, and supporting ideas and arguments with any necessary factual detail
- applying their growing knowledge of vocabulary, grammar and text structure to their writing and selecting the appropriate form
- drawing on knowledge of literary and rhetorical devices from their reading and listening to enhance the impact of their writing
- plan, draft, edit and proof-read through:
  - considering how their writing reflects the audiences and purposes for which it was intended
  - amending the vocabulary, grammar and structure of their writing to improve its coherence and overall effectiveness
  - paying attention to accurate grammar, punctuation and spelling; applying the spelling patterns and rules set out in [English Appendix 1](#) to the key stage 1 and 2 programmes of study for English.

## Grammar and vocabulary

Pupils should be taught to:

- consolidate and build on their knowledge of grammar and vocabulary through:
  - extending and applying the grammatical knowledge set out in [English Appendix 2](#) to the key stage 1 and 2 programmes of study to analyse more challenging texts
  - studying the effectiveness and impact of the grammatical features of the texts they read
  - drawing on new vocabulary and grammatical constructions from their reading and listening, and using these consciously in their writing and speech to achieve particular effects
  - knowing and understanding the differences between spoken and written language, including differences associated with formal and informal registers, and between Standard English and other varieties of English
  - using Standard English confidently in their own writing and speech

## English

- discussing reading, writing and spoken language with precise and confident use of linguistic and literary terminology.<sup>7</sup>

## Spoken English

Pupils should be taught to:

- speak confidently and effectively, including through:
  - using Standard English confidently in a range of formal and informal contexts, including classroom discussion
  - giving short speeches and presentations, expressing their own ideas and keeping to the point
  - participating in formal debates and structured discussions, summarising and/or building on what has been said
  - improvising, rehearsing and performing play scripts and poetry in order to generate language and discuss language use and meaning, using role, intonation, tone, volume, mood, silence, stillness and action to add impact.

---

<sup>7</sup> Teachers should refer to the [Glossary](#) that accompanies the programmes of study for English for their own information on the range of terms used within the programmes of study as a whole.

## Key stage 4 subject content

### Reading

Pupils should be taught to:

- read and appreciate the depth and power of the English literary heritage through:
  - reading a wide range of high-quality, challenging, classic literature and extended literary non-fiction, such as essays, reviews and journalism. This writing should include whole texts. The range will include:
    - at least one play by Shakespeare
    - works from the 19th, 20th and 21st centuries
    - poetry since 1789, including representative Romantic poetry
  - re-reading literature and other writing as a basis for making comparisons
  - choosing and reading books independently for challenge, interest and enjoyment.
- understand and critically evaluate texts through:
  - reading in different ways for different purposes, summarising and synthesising ideas and information, and evaluating their usefulness for particular purposes
  - drawing on knowledge of the purpose, audience for and context of the writing, including its social, historical and cultural context and the literary tradition to which it belongs, to inform evaluation
  - identifying and interpreting themes, ideas and information
  - exploring aspects of plot, characterisation, events and settings, the relationships between them and their effects
  - seeking evidence in the text to support a point of view, including justifying inferences with evidence
  - distinguishing between statements that are supported by evidence and those that are not, and identifying bias and misuse of evidence
  - analysing a writer's choice of vocabulary, form, grammatical and structural features, and evaluating their effectiveness and impact
  - making critical comparisons, referring to the contexts, themes, characterisation, style and literary quality of texts, and drawing on knowledge and skills from wider reading
- make an informed personal response, recognising that other responses to a text are possible and evaluating these.

### Writing

Pupils should be taught to:

- write accurately, fluently, effectively and at length for pleasure and information through:

## English

- adapting their writing for a wide range of purposes and audiences: to describe, narrate, explain, instruct, give and respond to information, and argue
- selecting and organising ideas, facts and key points, and citing evidence, details and quotation effectively and pertinently for support and emphasis
- selecting, and using judiciously, vocabulary, grammar, form, and structural and organisational features, including rhetorical devices, to reflect audience, purpose and context, and using Standard English where appropriate
- make notes, draft and write, including using information provided by others [e.g. writing a letter from key points provided; drawing on and using information from a presentation]
- revise, edit and proof-read through:
  - reflecting on whether their draft achieves the intended impact
  - restructuring their writing, and amending its grammar and vocabulary to improve coherence, consistency, clarity and overall effectiveness
  - paying attention to the accuracy and effectiveness of grammar, punctuation and spelling.<sup>8</sup>

## Grammar and vocabulary

Pupils should be taught to:

- consolidate and build on their knowledge of grammar and vocabulary through:
  - studying their effectiveness and impact in the texts they read
  - drawing on new vocabulary and grammatical constructions from their reading and listening, and using these consciously in their writing and speech to achieve particular effects
  - analysing some of the differences between spoken and written language, including differences associated with formal and informal registers, and between Standard English and other varieties of English
  - using linguistic and literary terminology accurately and confidently in discussing reading, writing and spoken language.

---

<sup>8</sup> Spelling patterns and guidance are set out in Appendix 1 to the key stage 1 and 2 programmes of study for English.

## Spoken English

Pupils should be taught to:

- speak confidently, audibly and effectively, including through:
  - using Standard English when the context and audience require it
  - working effectively in groups of different sizes and taking on required roles, including leading and managing discussions, involving others productively, reviewing and summarising, and contributing to meeting goals/deadlines
  - listening to and building on the contributions of others, asking questions to clarify and inform, and challenging courteously when necessary
  - planning for different purposes and audiences, including selecting and organising information and ideas effectively and persuasively for formal spoken presentations and debates
  - listening and responding in a variety of different contexts, both formal and informal, and evaluating content, viewpoints, evidence and aspects of presentation
  - improvising, rehearsing and performing play scripts and poetry in order to generate language and discuss language use and meaning, using role, intonation, tone, volume, mood, silence, stillness and action to add impact.



## Glossary for the programmes of study for English (non-statutory)

The following glossary includes all the technical grammatical terms used in the programmes of study for English, as well as others that might be useful. It is intended as an aid for teachers, not as the body of knowledge that should be learnt by pupils. Apart from a few which are used only in schools (for example, *root word*), the terms below are used with the meanings defined here in most modern books on English grammar. It is recognised that there are different schools of thought on grammar, but the terms defined here clarify those being used in the programmes of study. For further details, teachers should consult the many books that are available.

### Terms in definitions

As in any tightly structured area of knowledge, grammar, vocabulary and spelling involve a network of technical concepts that help to define each other. Consequently, the definition of one concept builds on other concepts that are equally technical. Concepts that are defined elsewhere in the glossary are hyperlinked. For some concepts, the technical definition may be slightly different from the meaning that some teachers may have learnt at school or may have been using with their own pupils; in these cases, the more familiar meaning is also discussed.

Term	Guidance	Example
<b>active voice</b>	An active <a href="#">verb</a> has its usual pattern of <a href="#">subject</a> and <a href="#">object</a> (in contrast with the <a href="#">passive</a> ).	Active: <i>The school arranged a visit.</i> Passive: <i>A visit was arranged by the school.</i>
<b>adjective</b>	<p>The surest way to identify adjectives is by the ways they can be used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>before a noun, to make the noun's meaning more specific (i.e. to <a href="#">modify</a> the noun), or</li> <li>after the verb <i>be</i>, as its <a href="#">complement</a>.</li> </ul> <p>Adjectives cannot be modified by other adjectives. This distinguishes them from <a href="#">nouns</a>, which can be.</p> <p>Adjectives are sometimes called 'describing words' because they pick out single characteristics such as size or colour. This is often true, but it doesn't help to distinguish adjectives from other word classes,</p>	<p><i>The pupils did some really <a href="#">good</a> work.</i> [adjective used before a noun, to modify it]</p> <p><i>Their work was <a href="#">good</a>.</i> [adjective used after the verb <i>be</i>, as its complement]</p> <p>Not adjectives:</p> <p><i>The lamp <a href="#">glowed</a>.</i> [verb] <i>It was such a bright <a href="#">red</a>!</i> [noun] <i>He spoke <a href="#">loudly</a>.</i> [adverb] <i>It was a French <a href="#">grammar</a> book.</i> [noun]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	because <a href="#">verbs</a> , <a href="#">nouns</a> and <a href="#">adverbs</a> can do the same thing.	
<b>adverb</b>	<p>The surest way to identify adverbs is by the ways they can be used: they can <a href="#">modify</a> a <a href="#">verb</a>, an <a href="#">adjective</a>, another adverb or even a whole clause.</p> <p>Adverbs are sometimes said to describe manner or time. This is often true, but it doesn't help to distinguish adverbs from other word classes that can be used as <a href="#">adverbials</a>, such as <a href="#">preposition phrases</a>, <a href="#">noun phrases</a> and <a href="#">subordinate clauses</a>.</p>	<p><i>Usha <u>soon</u> started snoring <u>loudly</u>.</i> [adverbs modifying the verbs <i>started</i> and <i>snoring</i>]</p> <p><i>That match was <u>really</u> exciting!</i> [adverb modifying the adjective <i>exciting</i>]</p> <p><i>We don't get to play games <u>very</u> often.</i> [adverb modifying the other adverb, <i>often</i>]</p> <p><i><u>Fortunately</u>, it didn't rain.</i> [adverb modifying the whole clause 'it didn't rain' by commenting on it]</p> <p>Not adverbs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>Usha went <u>up the stairs</u>.</i> [preposition phrase used as adverbial]</li> <li>▪ <i>She finished her work <u>this evening</u>.</i> [noun phrase used as adverbial]</li> <li>▪ <i>She finished <u>when the teacher got cross</u>.</i> [subordinate clause used as adverbial]</li> </ul>
<b>adverbial</b>	An adverbial is a word or phrase that is used, like an adverb, to modify a verb or clause. Of course, <a href="#">adverbs</a> can be used as adverbials, but many other types of words and phrases can be used this way, including <a href="#">preposition phrases</a> and <a href="#">subordinate clauses</a> .	<p>The <i>bus leaves <u>in five minutes</u>.</i> [preposition phrase as adverbial: modifies <i>leaves</i>]</p> <p><i>She promised to see him <u>last night</u>.</i> [noun phrase modifying either <i>promised</i> or <i>see</i>, according to the intended meaning]</p> <p><i>She worked <u>until she had finished</u>.</i> [subordinate clause as adverbial]</p>
<b>antonym</b>	Two words are antonyms if their meanings are opposites.	<p><i>hot – cold</i></p> <p><i>light – dark</i></p> <p><i>light – heavy</i></p>
<b>apostrophe</b>	<p>Apostrophes have two completely different uses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ showing the place of missing letters (e.g. <i>I'm</i> for <i>I am</i>)</li> </ul>	<p><i><u>I'm</u> going out and I <u>won't</u> be long.</i> [showing missing letters]</p> <p><i><u>Hannah's</u> mother went to town in <u>Justin's</u> car.</i> [marking possessives]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marking <u>possessives</u> (e.g. <i>Hannah's mother</i>).</li> </ul>	
<b>article</b>	The articles <i>the</i> (definite) and <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (indefinite) are the most common type of <u>determiner</u> .	<i><u>The</u> dog found <u>a</u> bone in <u>an</u> old box.</i>
<b>auxiliary verb</b>	<p>The auxiliary <u>verbs</u> are: <i>be</i>, <i>have</i>, <i>do</i> and the <u>modal verbs</u>. They can be used to make questions and negative statements. In addition:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>be</i> is used in the <u>progressive</u> and <u>passive</u></li> <li><i>have</i> is used in the <u>perfect</u></li> <li><i>do</i> is used to form questions and negative statements if no other auxiliary verb is present</li> </ul>	<p><i>They <u>are</u> winning the match.</i> [<i>be</i> used in the progressive]</p> <p><i><u>Have</u> you finished your picture?</i> [<i>have</i> used to make a question, and the perfect]</p> <p><i>No, I <u>don't</u> know him.</i> [<i>do</i> used to make a negative; no other auxiliary is present]</p> <p><i><u>Will</u> you come with me or not?</i> [modal verb <i>will</i> used to make a question about the other person's willingness]</p>
<b>clause</b>	<p>A clause is a special type of <u>phrase</u> whose <u>head</u> is a <u>verb</u>. Clauses can sometimes be complete sentences. Clauses may be <u>main</u> or <u>subordinate</u>.</p> <p>Traditionally, a clause had to have a <u>finite verb</u>, but most modern grammarians also recognise non-finite clauses.</p>	<p><i>It was raining.</i> [single-clause sentence]</p> <p><i>It was raining but we were indoors.</i> [two finite clauses]</p> <p><i><u>If you are coming to the party,</u> please let us know.</i> [finite subordinate clause inside a finite main clause]</p> <p><i>Usha went upstairs <u>to play on her computer.</u></i> [non-finite clause]</p>
<b>cohesion</b>	<p>A text has cohesion if it is clear how the meanings of its parts fit together. <u>Cohesive devices</u> can help to do this.</p> <p>In the example, there are repeated references to the same thing (shown by the different style pairings), and the logical relations, such as time and cause, between different parts are clear.</p>	<p><b>A visit</b> has been arranged for <b>Year 6</b>, to the <b>Mountain Peaks Field Study Centre</b>, leaving school at 9.30am. <b>This is an overnight visit.</b> <b>The centre</b> has beautiful grounds and <i>a nature trail</i>. During the afternoon, <b>the children</b> will follow <i>the trail</i>.</p>
<b>cohesive device</b>	Cohesive devices are words used to show how the different parts of a text fit together. In other words, they create <u>cohesion</u> .	<p><i>Julia's dad bought her a football.</i>  <i><u>The</u> football was expensive!</i>  [determiner; refers us back to a particular football]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>Some examples of cohesive devices are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <a href="#">determiners</a> and <a href="#">pronouns</a>, which can refer back to earlier words</li> <li>▪ <a href="#">conjunctions</a> and <a href="#">adverbs</a>, which can make relations between words clear</li> <li>▪ <a href="#">ellipsis</a> of expected words.</li> </ul>	<p><i>Joe was given a bike for Christmas. <u>He</u> liked <u>it</u> very much.</i> [the pronouns refer back to Joe and the bike]</p> <p><i>We'll be going shopping <u>before</u> we go to the park.</i> [<a href="#">conjunction</a>; makes a relationship of time clear]</p> <p><i>I'm afraid we're going to have to wait for the next train. <u>Meanwhile</u>, we could have a cup of tea.</i> [<a href="#">adverb</a>; refers back to the time of waiting]</p> <p><i>Where are you going? [<u>  </u>] To school!</i> [ellipsis of the expected words <i>I'm going</i>; links the answer back to the question]</p>
<b>complement</b>	<p>A verb's subject complement adds more information about its <a href="#">subject</a>, and its object complement does the same for its <a href="#">object</a>.</p> <p>Unlike the verb's object, its complement may be an adjective. The verb <i>be</i> normally has a complement.</p>	<p><i>She is <u>our teacher</u>.</i> [adds more information about the subject, <i>she</i>]</p> <p><i>They seem very <u>competent</u>.</i> [adds more information about the subject, <i>they</i>]</p> <p><i>Learning makes me <u>happy</u>.</i> [adds more information about the object, <i>me</i>]</p>
<b>compound, compounding</b>	<p>A compound word contains at least two <a href="#">root words</a> in its <a href="#">morphology</a>; e.g. <i>whiteboard</i>, <i>superman</i>. Compounding is very important in English.</p>	<p><i>blackbird, blow-dry, bookshop, ice-cream, English teacher, inkjet, one-eyed, bone-dry, baby-sit, daydream, outgrow</i></p>
<b>conjunction</b>	<p>A conjunction links two words or phrases together.</p> <p>There are two main types of conjunctions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <a href="#">co-ordinating</a> conjunctions (e.g. <i>and</i>) link two words or phrases together as an equal pair</li> <li>▪ subordinating conjunctions (e.g. <i>when</i>) introduce a <a href="#">subordinate clause</a>.</li> </ul>	<p><i>James bought a bat <u>and</u> ball.</i> [links the words <i>bat</i> and <i>ball</i> as an equal pair]</p> <p><i>Kylie is young <u>but</u> she can kick the ball hard.</i> [links two clauses as an equal pair]</p> <p><i>Everyone watches <u>when</u> Kyle does back-flips.</i> [introduces a subordinate clause]</p> <p><i>Joe can't practise kicking <u>because</u> he's injured.</i> [introduces a subordinate clause]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
<b>consonant</b>	<p>A sound which is produced when the speaker closes off or obstructs the flow of air through the vocal tract, usually using lips, tongue or teeth.</p> <p>Most of the letters of the alphabet represent consonants. Only the letters <i>a, e, i, o, u</i> and <i>y</i> can represent <a href="#">vowel</a> sounds.</p>	<p>/p/ [flow of air stopped by the lips, then released]</p> <p>/t/ [flow of air stopped by the tongue touching the roof of the mouth, then released]</p> <p>/f/ [flow of air obstructed by the bottom lip touching the top teeth]</p> <p>/s/ [flow of air obstructed by the tip of the tongue touching the gum line]</p>
<b>continuous</b>	See <a href="#">progressive</a>	
<b>co-ordinate, co-ordination</b>	<p>Words or phrases are co-ordinated if they are linked as an equal pair by a co-ordinating <a href="#">conjunction</a> (i.e. <i>and, but, or</i>).</p> <p>In the examples on the right, the co-ordinated elements are shown in bold, and the conjunction is underlined.</p> <p>The difference between co-ordination and <a href="#">subordination</a> is that, in subordination, the two linked elements are not equal.</p>	<p><b><i>Susan <u>and</u> Amra met in a café.</i></b> [links the words <i>Susan</i> and <i>Amra</i> as an equal pair]</p> <p><b><i>They talked <u>and</u> drank tea for an hour.</i></b> [links two clauses as an equal pair]</p> <p><b><i>Susan got a bus <u>but</u> Amra walked.</i></b> [links two clauses as an equal pair]</p> <p>Not co-ordination: <i>They ate <u>before</u> they met.</i> [<i>before</i> introduces a subordinate clause]</p>
<b>determiner</b>	<p>A determiner specifies a noun as known or unknown, and it goes before any modifiers (e.g. adjectives or other nouns).</p> <p>Some examples of determiners are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <a href="#">articles</a> (<i>the, a</i> or <i>an</i>)</li> <li>▪ demonstratives (e.g. <i>this, those</i>)</li> <li>▪ <a href="#">possessives</a> (e.g. <i>my, your</i>)</li> <li>▪ quantifiers (e.g. <i>some, every</i>).</li> </ul>	<p><u><i>the</i></u> <i>home team</i> [article, specifies the team as known]</p> <p><u><i>a</i></u> <i>good team</i> [article, specifies the team as unknown]</p> <p><u><i>that</i></u> <i>pupil</i> [demonstrative, known]</p> <p><u><i>Julia's</i></u> <i>parents</i> [possessive, known]</p> <p><u><i>some</i></u> <i>big boys</i> [quantifier, unknown]</p> <p>Contrast: <i>home <u>the</u> team, big <u>some</u> boys</i> [both incorrect, because the determiner should come before other modifiers]</p>
<b>digraph</b>	<p>A type of <a href="#">grapheme</a> where two letters represent one <a href="#">phoneme</a>.</p> <p>Sometimes, these two letters are not next to one another; this is called a</p>	<p>The digraph <u><i>ea</i></u> in <u><i>each</i></u> is pronounced /i:/.  The digraph <u><i>sh</i></u> in <u><i>shed</i></u> is pronounced /ʃ/.</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	split digraph.	The split digraph <u>i-e</u> in <u>line</u> is pronounced /aɪ/.
<b>ellipsis</b>	Ellipsis is the omission of a word or phrase which is expected and predictable.	<i>Frankie waved to Ivana and <u>she</u> watched her drive away.</i> <i>She did it because she wanted to <u>do it</u>.</i>
<b>etymology</b>	A word's etymology is its history: its origins in earlier forms of English or other languages, and how its form and meaning have changed. Many words in English have come from Greek, Latin or French.	The word <i>school</i> was borrowed from a Greek word $\acute{\sigma}\kappa\eta\lambda\acute{\eta}$ ( <i>skholé</i> ) meaning 'leisure'. The word <i>verb</i> comes from Latin <i>verbum</i> , meaning 'word'. The word <i>mutton</i> comes from French <i>mouton</i> , meaning 'sheep'.
<b>finite verb</b>	Every sentence typically has at least one verb which is either past or present tense. Such verbs are called 'finite'. The imperative verb in a command is also finite.  Verbs that are not finite, such as participles or infinitives, cannot stand on their own: they are linked to another verb in the sentence.	<i>Lizzie <u>does</u> the dishes every day.</i> [ <a href="#">present tense</a> ] <i>Even Hana <u>did</u> the dishes yesterday.</i> [ <a href="#">past tense</a> ] <i><u>Do</u> the dishes, Naser!</i> [imperative] Not finite verbs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>I have <u>done</u> them.</i> [combined with the finite verb <i>have</i>]</li> <li>▪ <i>I will <u>do</u> them.</i> [combined with the finite verb <i>will</i>]</li> <li>▪ <i>I want to <u>do</u> them!</i> [combined with the finite verb <i>want</i>]</li> </ul>
<b>fronting, fronted</b>	A word or phrase that normally comes after the <a href="#">verb</a> may be moved before the verb: when this happens, we say it has been 'fronted'. For example, a fronted adverbial is an <a href="#">adverbial</a> which has been moved before the verb.  When writing fronted phrases, we often follow them with a comma.	<i><u>Before we begin</u>, make sure you've got a pencil.</i> [Without fronting: <i>Make sure you've got a pencil before we begin.</i> ] <i><u>The day after tomorrow</u>, I'm visiting my granddad.</i> [Without fronting: <i>I'm visiting my granddad the day after tomorrow.</i> ]
<b>future</b>	Reference to future time can be marked in a number of different ways in English. All these ways involve the use of a <a href="#">present-tense verb</a> .  See also <a href="#">tense</a> .  Unlike many other languages (such	<i>He <u>will leave</u> tomorrow.</i> [present-tense <i>will</i> followed by infinitive <i>leave</i> ] <i>He <u>may leave</u> tomorrow.</i> [present-tense <i>may</i> followed by infinitive <i>leave</i> ]

Term	Guidance	Example
	as French, Spanish or Italian), English has no distinct 'future tense' form of the verb comparable with its <a href="#">present</a> and <a href="#">past</a> tenses.	<i>He <u>leaves</u> tomorrow.</i> [present-tense <i>leaves</i> ]  <i>He <u>is going to leave</u> tomorrow.</i> [present tense <i>is</i> followed by <i>going to</i> plus the infinitive <i>leave</i> ]
<b>GPC</b>	See <a href="#">grapheme-phoneme correspondences</a> .	
<b>grapheme</b>	A letter, or combination of letters, that corresponds to a single <a href="#">phoneme</a> within a word.	The grapheme <u>t</u> in the words <i>te<u>n</u></i> , <i>be<u>t</u></i> and <i>a<u>t</u>e</i> corresponds to the phoneme /t/.  The grapheme <u>ph</u> in the word <i>do<u>lphin</u></i> corresponds to the phoneme /f/.
<b>grapheme-phoneme correspondences</b>	The links between letters, or combinations of letters ( <a href="#">graphemes</a> ) and the speech sounds ( <a href="#">phonemes</a> ) that they represent.  In the English writing system, graphemes may correspond to different phonemes in different words.	The grapheme s corresponds to the phoneme /s/ in the word <u>see</u> , but...  ...it corresponds to the phoneme /z/ in the word <i>ea<u>sy</u></i> .
<b>head</b>	See <a href="#">phrase</a> .	
<b>homonym</b>	Two different words are homonyms if they both look exactly the same when written, and sound exactly the same when pronounced.	<i>Has he <u>left</u> yet? Yes – he went through the door on the <u>left</u>.</i>  <i>The noise a dog makes is called a <u>bark</u>. Trees have <u>bark</u>.</i>
<b>homophone</b>	Two different words are homophones if they sound exactly the same when pronounced.	<i><u>hear</u>, <u>here</u></i>  <i><u>some</u>, <u>sum</u></i>
<b>infinitive</b>	A verb's infinitive is the basic form used as the head-word in a dictionary (e.g. <i>walk</i> , <i>be</i> ).  Infinitives are often used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ after <i>to</i></li> <li>▪ after <a href="#">modal verbs</a>.</li> </ul>	<i>I want to <u>walk</u>.</i>  <i>I will <u>be</u> quiet.</i>
<b>inflection</b>	When we add <i>-ed</i> to <i>walk</i> , or change <i>mouse</i> to <i>mice</i> , this change of <a href="#">morphology</a> produces an inflection ('bending') of the basic word which has special grammar (e.g. <a href="#">past tense</a>	<i>dogs</i> is an inflection of <i>dog</i> . <i>went</i> is an inflection of <i>go</i> . <i>better</i> is an inflection of <i>good</i> .



Term	Guidance	Example
	or <a href="#">plural</a> ). In contrast, adding <i>-er</i> to <i>walk</i> produces a completely different word, <i>walker</i> , which is part of the same <a href="#">word family</a> . Inflection is sometimes thought of as merely a change of ending, but, in fact, some words change completely when inflected.	
<b>intransitive verb</b>	A verb which does not need an object in a sentence to complete its meaning is described as intransitive. See ' <a href="#">transitive verb</a> '.	<i>We all <u>laughed</u>.</i> <i>We would like to stay longer, but we must <u>leave</u>.</i>
<b>main clause</b>	A <a href="#">sentence</a> contains at least one <a href="#">clause</a> which is not a <a href="#">subordinate clause</a> ; such a clause is a main clause. A main clause may contain any number of subordinate clauses.	<i><u>It was raining</u> but <u>the sun was shining</u>.</i> [two main clauses] <i><u>The man who wrote it</u> told me <u>that it was true</u>.</i> [one main clause containing two subordinate clauses.] <i>She said, "It rained all day."</i> [one main clause containing another.]
<b>modal verb</b>	Modal verbs are used to change the meaning of other <a href="#">verbs</a> . They can express meanings such as certainty, ability, or obligation. The main modal verbs are <i>will, would, can, could, may, might, shall, should, must</i> and <i>ought</i> . A modal verb only has <a href="#">finite</a> forms and has no <a href="#">suffixes</a> (e.g. <i>I sing</i> – <i>he sings</i> , but not <i>I must</i> – <i>he musts</i> ).	<i>I <u>can</u> do this maths work by myself.</i> <i>This ride <u>may</u> be too scary for you!</i> <i>You <u>should</u> help your little brother.</i> <i>Is it going to rain? Yes, it <u>might</u>.</i> <i>Canning swim is important.</i> [not possible because <i>can</i> must be finite; contrast: <i>Being able to swim is important</i> , where <i>being</i> is not a modal verb]
<b>modify, modifier</b>	One word or phrase modifies another by making its meaning more specific. Because the two words make a <a href="#">phrase</a> , the 'modifier' is normally close to the modified word.	In the phrase <i>primary-school teacher</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>teacher</i> is modified by <i>primary-school</i> (to mean a specific kind of teacher)</li> <li>▪ <i>school</i> is modified by <i>primary</i> (to mean a specific kind of school).</li> </ul>
<b>morphology</b>	A word's morphology is its internal make-up in terms of <a href="#">root words</a> and <a href="#">suffixes</a> or <a href="#">prefixes</a> , as well as other kinds of change such as the change	<i>dogs</i> has the morphological make-up: <i>dog</i> + <i>s</i> . <i>unhelpfulness</i> has the



Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>of <i>mouse</i> to <i>mice</i>.</p> <p>Morphology may be used to produce different <a href="#">inflections</a> of the same word (e.g. <i>boy</i> – <i>boys</i>), or entirely new words (e.g. <i>boy</i> – <i>boyish</i>) belonging to the same <a href="#">word family</a>.</p> <p>A word that contains two or more root words is a <a href="#">compound</a> (e.g. <i>news+paper, ice+cream</i>).</p>	<p>morphological make-up:</p> <p><i>unhelpful</i> + <i>ness</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ where <i>unhelpful</i> = <i>un</i> + <i>helpful</i></li> <li>▪ and <i>helpful</i> = <i>help</i> + <i>ful</i></li> </ul>
<p><b>noun</b></p>	<p>The surest way to identify nouns is by the ways they can be used after <a href="#">determiners</a> such as <i>the</i>: for example, most nouns will fit into the frame “The ___ matters/matter.”</p> <p>Nouns are sometimes called ‘naming words’ because they name people, places and ‘things’; this is often true, but it doesn’t help to distinguish nouns from other <a href="#">word classes</a>. For example, <a href="#">prepositions</a> can name places and <a href="#">verbs</a> can name ‘things’ such as actions.</p> <p>Nouns may be classified as <b>common</b> (e.g. <i>boy, day</i>) or <b>proper</b> (e.g. <i>Ivan, Wednesday</i>), and also as <b>countable</b> (e.g. <i>thing, boy</i>) or <b>non-countable</b> (e.g. <i>stuff, money</i>). These classes can be recognised by the determiners they combine with.</p>	<p><i>Our <u>dog</u> bit the <u>burglar</u> on his <u>behind</u>!</i></p> <p><i>My big <u>brother</u> did an amazing <u>jump</u> on his <u>skateboard</u>.</i></p> <p><i><u>Actions</u> speak louder than <u>words</u>.</i></p> <p>Not nouns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>He’s <u>behind</u> you!</i> [this names a place, but is a preposition, not a noun]</li> <li>▪ <i>She can <u>jump</u> so high!</i> [this names an action, but is a verb, not a noun]</li> </ul> <p>common, countable: <i>a <u>book</u>, <u>books</u>, two <u>chocolates</u>, one <u>day</u>, fewer <u>ideas</u></i></p> <p>common, non-countable: <i><u>money</u>, some <u>chocolate</u>, less <u>imagination</u></i></p> <p>proper, countable: <i><u>Marilyn</u>, <u>London</u>, <u>Wednesday</u></i></p>
<p><b>noun phrase</b></p>	<p>A noun phrase is a <a href="#">phrase</a> with a noun as its <a href="#">head</a>, e.g. <i>some foxes, foxes with bushy tails</i>. Some grammarians recognise one-word phrases, so that <i>foxes are multiplying</i> would contain the noun <i>foxes</i> acting as the head of the noun phrase <i>foxes</i>.</p>	<p><i><u>Adult foxes</u> can jump.</i> [<i>adult</i> modifies <i>foxes</i>, so <i>adult</i> belongs to the noun phrase]</p> <p><i><u>Almost all healthy adult foxes in this area</u> can jump.</i> [all the other words help to modify <i>foxes</i>, so they all belong to the noun phrase]</p>
<p><b>object</b></p>	<p>An object is normally a <a href="#">noun</a>, <a href="#">pronoun</a> or <a href="#">noun phrase</a> that comes straight after the <a href="#">verb</a>, and shows what the verb is acting upon.</p> <p>Objects can be turned into the</p>	<p><i>Year 2 designed <u>puppets</u>.</i> [noun acting as object]</p> <p><i>I like <u>that</u>.</i> [pronoun acting as object]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<p><u>subject</u> of a <u>passive</u> verb, and cannot be <u>adjectives</u> (contrast with <u>complements</u>).</p>	<p>Some people suggested <u>a pretty display</u>. [noun phrase acting as object]</p> <p>Contrast:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>A display was suggested.</i> [object of active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb]</li> <li>▪ <i>Year 2 designed pretty.</i> [incorrect, because adjectives cannot be objects]</li> </ul>
<b>participle</b>	<p>Verbs in English have two participles, called ‘present participle’ (e.g. <i>walking, taking</i>) and ‘past participle’ (e.g. <i>walked, taken</i>).</p> <p>Unfortunately, these terms can be confusing to learners, because:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ they don’t necessarily have anything to do with present or past time</li> <li>▪ although past participles are used as <u>perfects</u> (e.g. <i>has eaten</i>) they are also used as <u>passives</u> (e.g. <i>was eaten</i>).</li> </ul>	<p><i>He is <u>walking</u> to school.</i> [present participle in a <u>progressive</u>]</p> <p><i>He has <u>taken</u> the bus to school.</i> [past participle in a <u>perfect</u>]</p> <p><i>The photo was <u>taken</u> in the rain.</i> [past participle in a <u>passive</u>]</p>
<b>passive</b>	<p>The sentence <i>It was eaten by our dog</i> is the passive of <i>Our dog ate it</i>. A passive is recognisable from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ the past <u>participle</u> form <i>eaten</i></li> <li>▪ the normal <u>object</u> (<i>it</i>) turned into the <u>subject</u></li> <li>▪ the normal subject (<i>our dog</i>) turned into an optional <u>preposition phrase</u> with <i>by</i> as its <u>head</u></li> <li>▪ the verb <i>be(was)</i>, or some other verb such as <i>get</i>.</li> </ul> <p>Contrast <u>active</u>.</p> <p>A verb is not ‘passive’ just because it has a passive meaning: it must be the passive version of an active verb.</p>	<p><i>A visit was <u>arranged</u> by the school.</i></p> <p><i>Our cat got <u>run</u> over by a bus.</i></p> <p>Active versions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>The school arranged a visit.</i></li> <li>▪ <i>A bus ran over our cat.</i></li> </ul> <p>Not passive:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>He received a warning.</i> [past tense, active <i>received</i>]</li> <li>▪ <i>We had an accident.</i> [past tense, active <i>had</i>]</li> </ul>
<b>past tense</b>	<p><u>Verbs</u> in the past tense are commonly used to:</p>	<p><i>Tom and Chris <u>showed</u> me their new TV.</i> [names an event in the</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ talk about the past</li> <li>▪ talk about imagined situations</li> <li>▪ make a request sound more polite.</li> </ul> <p>Most verbs take a <a href="#">suffix –ed</a>, to form their past tense, but many commonly-used verbs are irregular.</p> <p>See also <a href="#">tense</a>.</p>	<p>past]</p> <p><i>Antonio <u>went</u> on holiday to Brazil.</i> [names an event in the past; irregular past of go]</p> <p><i>I wish I <u>had</u> a puppy.</i> [names an imagined situation, not a situation in the past]</p> <p><i>I <u>was</u> hoping you'd help tomorrow.</i> [makes an implied request sound more polite]</p>
<b>perfect</b>	<p>The perfect form of a <a href="#">verb</a> generally calls attention to the consequences of a prior event; for example, <i>he has gone to lunch</i> implies that he is still away, in contrast with <i>he went to lunch</i>. 'Had gone to lunch' takes a past time point (i.e. when we arrived) as its reference point and is another way of establishing time relations in a text. The perfect tense is formed by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ turning the verb into its past <a href="#">participle inflection</a></li> <li>▪ adding a form of the verb <i>have</i> before it.</li> </ul> <p>It can also be combined with the <a href="#">progressive</a> (e.g. <i>he has been going</i>).</p>	<p><i>She <u>has downloaded</u> some songs.</i> [present perfect; now she has some songs]</p> <p><i>I <u>had eaten</u> lunch when you came.</i> [past perfect; I wasn't hungry when you came]</p>
<b>phoneme</b>	<p>A phoneme is the smallest unit of sound that signals a distinct, contrasting meaning. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ /t/ contrasts with /k/ to signal the difference between <i>tap</i> and <i>cap</i></li> <li>▪ /t/ contrasts with /l/ to signal the difference between <i>bought</i> and <i>ball</i>.</li> </ul> <p>It is this contrast in meaning that tells us there are two distinct phonemes at work.</p> <p>There are around 44 phonemes in English; the exact number depends on regional accents. A single</p>	<p>The word <i>cat</i> has three letters and three phonemes: /kæt/</p> <p>The word <i>catch</i> has five letters and three phonemes: /kætʃ/</p> <p>The word <i>caught</i> has six letters and three phonemes: /kɔ:t/</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>phoneme may be represented in writing by one, two, three or four letters constituting a single <a href="#">grapheme</a>.</p>	
<b>phrase</b>	<p>A phrase is a group of words that are grammatically connected so that they stay together, and that expand a single word, called the ‘head’. The phrase is a <a href="#">noun phrase</a> if its head is a noun, a <a href="#">preposition phrase</a> if its head is a preposition, and so on; but if the head is a <a href="#">verb</a>, the phrase is called a <a href="#">clause</a>. Phrases can be made up of other phrases.</p>	<p><i>She waved to <u>her mother</u>.</i> [a noun phrase, with the noun <i>mother</i> as its head]</p> <p><i>She waved <u>to her mother</u>.</i> [a preposition phrase, with the preposition <i>to</i> as its head]</p> <p><i><u>She waved to her mother</u>.</i> [a clause, with the verb <i>waved</i> as its head]</p>
<b>plural</b>	<p>A plural <a href="#">noun</a> normally has a <a href="#">suffix</a> –s or –es and means ‘more than one’.</p> <p>There are a few nouns with different <a href="#">morphology</a> in the plural (e.g. <i>mice</i>, <i>formulae</i>).</p>	<p><i><u>dogs</u></i> [more than one dog]; <i><u>boxes</u></i> [more than one box]</p> <p><i><u>mice</u></i> [more than one mouse]</p>
<b>possessive</b>	<p>A possessive can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ a <a href="#">noun</a> followed by an <a href="#">apostrophe</a>, with or without s</li> <li>▪ a possessive <a href="#">pronoun</a>.</li> </ul> <p>The relation expressed by a possessive goes well beyond ordinary ideas of ‘possession’.</p> <p>A possessive may act as a <a href="#">determiner</a>.</p>	<p><i><u>Tariq's</u> book</i> [Tariq has the book]</p> <p><i>The <u>boys'</u> arrival</i> [the boys arrive]</p> <p><i><u>His</u> obituary</i> [the obituary is about him]</p> <p><i>That essay is <u>mine</u>.</i> [I wrote the essay]</p>
<b>prefix</b>	<p>A prefix is added at the beginning of a <a href="#">word</a> in order to turn it into another word.</p> <p>Contrast <a href="#">suffix</a>.</p>	<p><i><u>overtake</u>, <u>disappear</u></i></p>
<b>preposition</b>	<p>A preposition links a following <a href="#">noun</a>, <a href="#">pronoun</a> or <a href="#">noun phrase</a> to some other word in the sentence.</p> <p>Prepositions often describe locations or directions, but can describe other things, such as relations of time.</p> <p>Words like <i>before</i> or <i>since</i> can act either as prepositions or as <a href="#">conjunctions</a>.</p>	<p><i>Tom waved goodbye <u>to</u> Christy.</i></p> <p><i>She'll be back <u>from</u> Australia <u>in</u> two weeks.</i></p> <p><i>I haven't seen my dog <u>since</u> this morning.</i></p> <p>Contrast: <i>I'm going, <u>since</u> no-one wants me here!</i> [conjunction: links two clauses]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
<b>preposition phrase</b>	A preposition phrase has a preposition as its head followed by a noun, pronoun or noun phrase.	<i>He was <u>in bed</u>.</i> <i>I met them <u>after the party</u>.</i>
<b>present tense</b>	<u>Verbs</u> in the present tense are commonly used to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ talk about the present</li> <li>▪ talk about the <u>future</u>.</li> </ul> They may take a suffix –s (depending on the <u>subject</u> ). See also <u>tense</u> .	<i>Jamal <u>goes</u> to the pool every day.</i> [describes a habit that exists now] <i>He <u>can</u> swim.</i> [describes a state that is true now] <i>The bus <u>arrives</u> at three.</i> [scheduled now] <i>My friends <u>are</u> coming to play.</i> [describes a plan in progress now]
<b>progressive</b>	The progressive (also known as the ‘continuous’) form of a <u>verb</u> generally describes events in progress. It is formed by combining the verb’s present <u>participle</u> (e.g. <i>singing</i> ) with a form of the verb <i>be</i> (e.g. <i>he was singing</i> ). The progressive can also be combined with the <u>perfect</u> (e.g. <i>he has been singing</i> ).	<i>Michael <u>is singing</u> in the store room.</i> [present progressive] <i>Amanda <u>was making</u> a patchwork quilt.</i> [past progressive] <i>Usha <u>had been practising</u> for an hour when I called.</i> [past perfect progressive]
<b>pronoun</b>	Pronouns are normally used like <u>nouns</u> , except that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ they are grammatically more specialised</li> <li>▪ it is harder to <u>modify</u> them</li> </ul> In the examples, each sentence is written twice: once with nouns, and once with pronouns (underlined). Where the same thing is being talked about, the words are shown in bold.	<i><b>Amanda</b> waved to <b>Michael</b>.</i> <i><u>She</u> waved to <u>him</u>.</i> <i><b>John’s</b> mother is over there. <u>His</u> mother is over there.</i> <i>The <b>visit</b> will be an overnight <b>visit</b>.</i> <i><u>This</u> will be an overnight <b>visit</b>.</i> <i><b>Simon</b> is the person: <u>Simon</u> broke it. <u>He</u> is the one <u>who</u> broke it.</i>
<b>punctuation</b>	Punctuation includes any conventional features of writing other than spelling and general layout: the standard punctuation marks . , ; : ? ! – – ( ) “ ” ‘ ’ , and also word-spaces, capital letters, apostrophes, paragraph breaks and bullet points. One important role of punctuation is to indicate <u>sentence</u> boundaries.	<i><u>“I’m going out, Usha, and I won’t be long.” Mum said.</u></i>
<b>Received Pronunciation</b>	Received Pronunciation (often abbreviated to RP) is an accent which is used only by a small	

Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>minority of English speakers in England. It is not associated with any one region. Because of its regional neutrality, it is the accent which is generally shown in dictionaries in the UK (but not, of course, in the USA). RP has no special status in the national curriculum.</p>	
<b>register</b>	<p>Classroom lessons, football commentaries and novels use different registers of the same language, recognised by differences of vocabulary and grammar. Registers are ‘varieties’ of a language which are each tied to a range of uses, in contrast with dialects, which are tied to groups of users.</p>	<p><i>I regret to inform you that Mr Joseph Smith has passed away.</i> [formal letter]</p> <p><i>Have you heard that Joe has died?</i> [casual speech]</p> <p><i>Joe falls down and dies, centre stage.</i> [stage direction]</p>
<b>relative clause</b>	<p>A relative clause is a special type of <a href="#">subordinate clause</a> that modifies a <a href="#">noun</a>. It often does this by using a relative <a href="#">pronoun</a> such as <i>who</i> or <i>that</i> to refer back to that noun, though the relative pronoun <i>that</i> is often omitted.</p> <p>A relative clause may also be attached to a <a href="#">clause</a>. In that case, the pronoun refers back to the whole clause, rather than referring back to a noun.</p> <p>In the examples, the relative clauses are underlined, and both the pronouns and the words they refer back to are in bold.</p>	<p><i>That’s the <b>boy</b> <u>who lives near school</u>.</i> [<i>who</i> refers back to <i>boy</i>]</p> <p><i>The <b>prize</b> <u>that I won</u> was a book.</i> [<i>that</i> refers back to <i>prize</i>]</p> <p><i>The <b>prize</b> <u>I won</u> was a book.</i> [the pronoun <i>that</i> is omitted]</p> <p><i><b>Tom broke the game, which annoyed Ali.</b></i> [<i>which</i> refers back to the whole clause]</p>
<b>root word</b>	<p><a href="#">Morphology</a> breaks words down into root words, which can stand alone, and <a href="#">suffixes</a> or <a href="#">prefixes</a> which can’t. For example, <i>help</i> is the root word for other words in its <a href="#">word family</a> such as <i>helpful</i> and <i>helpless</i>, and also for its <a href="#">inflections</a> such as <i>helping</i>. <a href="#">Compound</a> words (e.g. <i>help-desk</i>) contain two or more root words. When looking in a dictionary, we sometimes have to look for the</p>	<p><i>played</i> [the root word is <i>play</i>]</p> <p><i>unfair</i> [the root word is <i>fair</i>]</p> <p><i>football</i> [the root words are <i>foot</i> and <i>ball</i>]</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	root word (or words) of the word we are interested in.	
<b>schwa</b>	<p>The name of a vowel sound that is found only in unstressed positions in English. It is the most common vowel sound in English.</p> <p>It is written as /ə/ in the International Phonetic Alphabet. In the English writing system, it can be written in many different ways.</p>	<p>/əlɒŋ/ [<u>a</u>long]</p> <p>/bʌtə/ [<u>u</u>tter]</p> <p>/dɒktə/ [<u>o</u>ctor]</p>
<b>sentence</b>	<p>A sentence is a group of <a href="#">words</a> which are grammatically connected to each other but not to any words outside the sentence.</p> <p>The form of a sentence's main clause shows whether it is being used as a statement, a question, a command or an exclamation.</p> <p>A sentence may consist of a single clause or it may contain several clauses held together by subordination or co-ordination. Classifying sentences as 'simple', 'complex' or 'compound' can be confusing, because a 'simple' sentence may be complicated, and a 'complex' one may be straightforward. The terms '<b>single-clause sentence</b>' and '<b>multi-clause sentence</b>' may be more helpful.</p>	<p><u>John went to his friend's house. He stayed there till tea-time.</u></p> <p><i>John went to his friend's house, he stayed there till tea-time.</i> [This is a 'comma splice', a common error in which a comma is used where either a full stop or a semi-colon is needed to indicate the lack of any grammatical connection between the two clauses.]</p> <p><i>You are my friend.</i> [statement]</p> <p><i>Are you my friend?</i> [question]</p> <p><i>Be my friend!</i> [command]</p> <p><i>What a good friend you are!</i> [exclamation]</p> <p><i>Ali went home on his bike to his goldfish and his current library book about pets.</i> [single-clause sentence]</p> <p><i>She went shopping but took back everything she had bought because she didn't like any of it.</i> [multi-clause sentence]</p>
<b>split digraph</b>	See <a href="#">digraph</a> .	
<b>Standard English</b>	Standard English can be recognised by the use of a very small range of forms such as <i>those books, I did it</i> and <i>I wasn't doing anything</i> (rather than their non-Standard equivalents); it is not limited to any particular accent. It is the variety of English which is used, with only minor	<p><i>I did it because they were not willing to undertake any more work on those houses.</i> [formal Standard English]</p> <p><i>I did it cos they wouldn't do any more work on those houses.</i> [casual Standard English]</p>



Term	Guidance	Example
	variation, as a major world language. Some people use Standard English all the time, in all situations from the most casual to the most formal, so it covers most <a href="#">registers</a> . The aim of the national curriculum is that everyone should be able to use Standard English as needed in writing and in relatively formal speaking.	<i>I done it cos they wouldn't do no more work on them houses.</i> [casual non-Standard English]
<b>stress</b>	A <a href="#">syllable</a> is stressed if it is pronounced more forcefully than the syllables next to it. The other syllables are unstressed.	<i><u>about</u></i> <i><u>visit</u></i>
<b>subject</b>	The subject of a verb is normally the <a href="#">noun</a> , <a href="#">noun phrase</a> or <a href="#">pronoun</a> that names the 'do-er' or 'be-er'. The subject's normal position is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ just before the <a href="#">verb</a> in a statement</li> <li>▪ just after the <a href="#">auxiliary verb</a>, in a question.</li> </ul> Unlike the verb's <a href="#">object</a> and <a href="#">complement</a> , the subject can determine the form of the verb (e.g. <i>I am</i> , <i>you are</i> ).	<i><u>Rula's mother</u> went out.</i> <i><u>That</u> is uncertain.</i> <i><u>The children</u> will study the animals.</i> <i>Will <u>the children</u> study the animals?</i>
<b>subjunctive</b>	In some languages, the <a href="#">inflections</a> of a <a href="#">verb</a> include a large range of special forms which are used typically in <a href="#">subordinate clauses</a> , and are called 'subjunctives'. English has very few such forms and those it has tend to be used in rather formal styles.	<i>The school requires that all pupils <u>be</u> honest.</i> <i>The school rules demand that pupils not <u>enter</u> the gym at lunchtime.</i> <i>If Zoë <u>were</u> the class president, things would be much better.</i>
<b>subordinate, subordination</b>	A subordinate word or phrase tells us more about the meaning of the word it is subordinate to. Subordination can be thought of as an unequal relationship between a subordinate word and a main word. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ an adjective is subordinate to the noun it <a href="#">modifies</a></li> <li>▪ <a href="#">subjects</a> and <a href="#">objects</a> are</li> </ul>	<i><u>big</u> dogs [big is subordinate to dogs]</i> <i><u>Big dogs</u> need <u>long</u> walks.</i> [big dogs and long walks are subordinate to need] <i>We can watch TV <u>when we've finished</u>.</i> [when we've finished is subordinate to watch]



Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>subordinate to their <a href="#">verbs</a>.</p> <p>Subordination is much more common than the equal relationship of <a href="#">co-ordination</a>.</p> <p>See also <a href="#">subordinate clause</a>.</p>	
<b>subordinate clause</b>	<p>A clause which is <a href="#">subordinate</a> to some other part of the same <a href="#">sentence</a> is a subordinate clause; for example, in <i>The apple that I ate was sour</i>, the clause <i>that I ate</i> is subordinate to <i>apple</i> (which it <a href="#">modifies</a>). Subordinate clauses contrast with <a href="#">co-ordinate</a> clauses as in <i>It was sour but looked very tasty</i>. (Contrast: <a href="#">main clause</a>)</p> <p>However, clauses that are directly quoted as direct speech are not subordinate clauses.</p>	<p><i>That's the street <u>where Ben lives</u>.</i> [<a href="#">relative clause</a>; modifies <i>street</i>]</p> <p><i>He watched her <u>as she disappeared</u>.</i> [<a href="#">adverbial</a>; modifies <i>watched</i>]</p> <p><i><u>What you said</u> was very nice.</i> [acts as <a href="#">subject</a> of <i>was</i>]</p> <p><i>She noticed <u>an hour had passed</u>.</i> [acts as <a href="#">object</a> of <i>noticed</i>]</p> <p>Not subordinate: <i>He shouted, "<u>Look out!</u>"</i></p>
<b>suffix</b>	<p>A suffix is an 'ending', used at the end of one word to turn it into another word. Unlike <a href="#">root words</a>, suffixes cannot stand on their own as a complete word.</p> <p>Contrast <a href="#">prefix</a>.</p>	<p><i>call – <u>called</u></i></p> <p><i>teach – <u>teacher</u></i> [turns a <a href="#">verb</a> into a <a href="#">noun</a>]</p> <p><i>terror – <u>terrorise</u></i> [turns a noun into a verb]</p> <p><i>green – <u>greenish</u></i> [leaves <a href="#">word class</a> unchanged]</p>
<b>syllable</b>	<p>A syllable sounds like a beat in a <a href="#">word</a>. Syllables consist of at least one <a href="#">vowel</a>, and possibly one or more <a href="#">consonants</a>.</p>	<p><i>Cat</i> has one syllable.</p> <p><i>Fairy</i> has two syllables.</p> <p><i>Hippopotamus</i> has five syllables.</p>
<b>synonym</b>	<p>Two words are synonyms if they have the same meaning, or similar meanings. Contrast <a href="#">antonym</a>.</p>	<p><i>talk – <u>speak</u></i></p> <p><i>old – <u>elderly</u></i></p>
<b>tense</b>	<p>In English, tense is the choice between <a href="#">present</a> and <a href="#">past verbs</a>, which is special because it is signalled by <a href="#">inflections</a> and normally indicates differences of time. In contrast, languages like French, Spanish and Italian, have three or more distinct tense forms, including</p>	<p><i>He <u>studies</u>.</i> [present tense – present time]</p> <p><i>He <u>studied</u> yesterday.</i> [past tense – past time]</p> <p><i>He <u>studies</u> tomorrow, or else!</i> [present tense – future time]</p> <p><i>He <u>may study</u> tomorrow.</i> [present</p>

Term	Guidance	Example
	<p>a future tense. (See also: <a href="#">future</a>.)</p> <p>The simple tenses (present and past) may be combined in English with the <a href="#">perfect</a> and <a href="#">progressive</a>.</p>	<p>tense + infinitive – future time]</p> <p><i>He <u>plans</u> to <u>study</u> tomorrow.</i> [present tense + infinitive – future time]</p> <p><i>If he <u>studied</u> tomorrow, he'd see the difference!</i> [past tense – imagined future]</p> <p>Contrast three distinct tense forms in Spanish:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>Estudia.</i> [present tense]</li> <li>▪ <i>Estudió.</i> [past tense]</li> <li>▪ <i>Estudiará.</i> [future tense]</li> </ul>
<b>transitive verb</b>	<p>A transitive verb takes at least one object in a sentence to complete its meaning, in contrast to an <a href="#">intransitive verb</a>, which does not.</p>	<p><i>He <u>loves</u> Juliet.</i></p> <p><i>She <u>understands</u> English grammar.</i></p>
<b>trigraph</b>	<p>A type of <a href="#">grapheme</a> where three letters represent one <a href="#">phoneme</a>.</p>	<p><i><u>H</u><u>i</u><u>g</u><u>h</u>, <u>p</u><u>u</u><u>r</u><u>e</u>, <u>p</u><u>a</u><u>t</u><u>c</u><u>h</u>, <u>h</u><u>e</u><u>d</u><u>g</u><u>e</u></i></p>
<b>unstressed</b>	<p>See <a href="#">stressed</a>.</p>	
<b>verb</b>	<p>The surest way to identify verbs is by the ways they can be used: they can usually have a <a href="#">tense</a>, either <a href="#">present</a> or <a href="#">past</a> (see also <a href="#">future</a>).</p> <p>Verbs are sometimes called ‘doing words’ because many verbs name an action that someone does; while this can be a way of recognising verbs, it doesn’t distinguish verbs from <a href="#">nouns</a> (which can also name actions). Moreover many verbs name states or feelings rather than actions.</p> <p>Verbs can be classified in various ways: for example, as <a href="#">auxiliary</a>, or <a href="#">modal</a>; as <a href="#">transitive</a> or <a href="#">intransitive</a>; and as states or events.</p>	<p><i>He <u>lives</u> in Birmingham.</i> [present tense]</p> <p><i>The teacher <u>wrote</u> a song for the class.</i> [past tense]</p> <p><i>He <u>likes</u> chocolate.</i> [present tense; not an action]</p> <p><i>He <u>knew</u> my father.</i> [past tense; not an action]</p> <p>Not verbs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>The <u>walk</u> to Halina’s house will take an hour.</i> [noun]</li> <li>▪ <i>All that <u>surfing</u> makes Morwenna so sleepy!</i> [noun]</li> </ul>
<b>vowel</b>	<p>A vowel is a speech sound which is produced without any closure or obstruction of the vocal tract.</p> <p>Vowels can form <a href="#">syllables</a> by themselves, or they may combine with <a href="#">consonants</a>.</p> <p>In the English writing system, the letters <i>a, e, i, o, u</i> and <i>y</i> can represent vowels.</p>	

Term	Guidance	Example
<b>word</b>	<p>A word is a unit of grammar: it can be selected and moved around relatively independently, but cannot easily be split. In punctuation, words are normally separated by word spaces.</p> <p>Sometimes, a sequence that appears grammatically to be two words is collapsed into a single written word, indicated with a hyphen or apostrophe (e.g. <i>well-built</i>, <i>he's</i>).</p>	<p><i>headteacher</i> or <i>head teacher</i> [can be written with or without a space]</p> <p><i>I'm</i> going out.</p> <p><i>9.30 am</i></p>
<b>word class</b>	<p>Every <u>word</u> belongs to a word class which summarises the ways in which it can be used in grammar. The major word classes for English are: <u>noun</u>, <u>verb</u>, <u>adjective</u>, <u>adverb</u>, <u>preposition</u>, <u>determiner</u>, <u>pronoun</u>, <u>conjunction</u>. Word classes are sometimes called 'parts of speech'.</p>	
<b>word family</b>	<p>The <u>words</u> in a word family are normally related to each other by a combination of <u>morphology</u>, grammar and meaning.</p>	<p><i>teach – teacher</i></p> <p><i>extend – extent – extensive</i></p> <p><i>grammar – grammatical – grammarian</i></p>

# Mathematics

## Purpose of study

Mathematics is a creative and highly inter-connected discipline that has been developed over centuries, providing the solution to some of history's most intriguing problems. It is essential to everyday life, critical to science, technology and engineering, and necessary for financial literacy and most forms of employment. A high-quality mathematics education therefore provides a foundation for understanding the world, the ability to reason mathematically, an appreciation of the beauty and power of mathematics, and a sense of enjoyment and curiosity about the subject.

## Aims

The national curriculum for mathematics aims to ensure that all pupils:

- become **fluent** in the fundamentals of mathematics, including through varied and frequent practice with increasingly complex problems over time, so that pupils develop conceptual understanding and the ability to recall and apply knowledge rapidly and accurately.
- **reason mathematically** by following a line of enquiry, conjecturing relationships and generalisations, and developing an argument, justification or proof using mathematical language
- can **solve problems** by applying their mathematics to a variety of routine and non-routine problems with increasing sophistication, including breaking down problems into a series of simpler steps and persevering in seeking solutions.

Mathematics is an interconnected subject in which pupils need to be able to move fluently between representations of mathematical ideas. The programmes of study are, by necessity, organised into apparently distinct domains, but pupils should make rich connections across mathematical ideas to develop fluency, mathematical reasoning and competence in solving increasingly sophisticated problems. They should also apply their mathematical knowledge to science and other subjects.

The expectation is that the majority of pupils will move through the programmes of study at broadly the same pace. However, decisions about when to progress should always be based on the security of pupils' understanding and their readiness to progress to the next stage. Pupils who grasp concepts rapidly should be challenged through being offered rich and sophisticated problems before any acceleration through new content. Those who are not sufficiently fluent with earlier material should consolidate their understanding, including through additional practice, before moving on.

## Information and communication technology (ICT)

Calculators should not be used as a substitute for good written and mental arithmetic. They should therefore only be introduced near the end of key stage 2 to support pupils' conceptual understanding and exploration of more complex number problems, if written and mental arithmetic are secure. In both primary and secondary schools, teachers should use their judgement about when ICT tools should be used.

## Spoken language

The national curriculum for mathematics reflects the importance of spoken language in pupils' development across the whole curriculum – cognitively, socially and linguistically. The quality and variety of language that pupils hear and speak are key factors in developing their mathematical vocabulary and presenting a mathematical justification, argument or proof. They must be assisted in making their thinking clear to themselves as well as others and teachers should ensure that pupils build secure foundations by using discussion to probe and remedy their misconceptions.

## School curriculum

The programmes of study for mathematics are set out year-by-year for key stages 1 and 2. Schools are, however, only required to teach the relevant programme of study by the end of the key stage. Within each key stage, schools therefore have the flexibility to introduce content earlier or later than set out in the programme of study. In addition, schools can introduce key stage content during an earlier key stage, if appropriate. All schools are also required to set out their school curriculum for mathematics on a year-by-year basis and make this information available online.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets] or the content indicated as being 'non-statutory'.**

## Key stage 1 – years 1 and 2

The principal focus of mathematics teaching in key stage 1 is to ensure that pupils develop confidence and mental fluency with whole numbers, counting and place value. This should involve working with numerals, words and the four operations, including with practical resources [for example, concrete objects and measuring tools].

At this stage, pupils should develop their ability to recognise, describe, draw, compare and sort different shapes and use the related vocabulary. Teaching should also involve using a range of measures to describe and compare different quantities such as length, mass, capacity/volume, time and money.

By the end of year 2, pupils should know the number bonds to 20 and be precise in using and understanding place value. An emphasis on practice at this early stage will aid fluency.

Pupils should read and spell mathematical vocabulary, at a level consistent with their increasing word reading and spelling knowledge at key stage 1.

# Year 1 programme of study

## Number – number and place value

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- count to and across 100, forwards and backwards, beginning with 0 or 1, or from any given number
- count, read and write numbers to 100 in numerals; count in multiples of twos, fives and tens
- given a number, identify one more and one less
- identify and represent numbers using objects and pictorial representations including the number line, and use the language of: equal to, more than, less than (fewer), most, least
- read and write numbers from 1 to 20 in numerals and words.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils practise counting (1, 2, 3...), ordering (for example, first, second, third...), and to indicate a quantity (for example, 3 apples, 2 centimetres), including solving simple concrete problems, until they are fluent.

Pupils begin to recognise place value in numbers beyond 20 by reading, writing, counting and comparing numbers up to 100, supported by objects and pictorial representations.

They practise counting as reciting numbers and counting as enumerating objects, and counting in twos, fives and tens from different multiples to develop their recognition of patterns in the number system (for example, odd and even numbers), including varied and frequent practice through increasingly complex questions.

They recognise and create repeating patterns with objects and with shapes.

**Number – addition and subtraction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- read, write and interpret mathematical statements involving addition (+), subtraction (−) and equals (=) signs
- represent and use number bonds and related subtraction facts within 20
- add and subtract one-digit and two-digit numbers to 20, including zero
- solve one-step problems that involve addition and subtraction, using concrete objects and pictorial representations, and missing number problems such as  $7 = \square - 9$ .

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils memorise and reason with number bonds to 10 and 20 in several forms (for example,  $9 + 7 = 16$ ;  $16 - 7 = 9$ ;  $7 = 16 - 9$ ). They should realise the effect of adding or subtracting zero. This establishes addition and subtraction as related operations.

Pupils combine and increase numbers, counting forwards and backwards.

They discuss and solve problems in familiar practical contexts, including using quantities. Problems should include the terms: put together, add, altogether, total, take away, distance between, difference between, more than and less than, so that pupils develop the concept of addition and subtraction and are enabled to use these operations flexibly.



## Number – multiplication and division

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- solve one-step problems involving multiplication and division, by calculating the answer using concrete objects, pictorial representations and arrays with the support of the teacher.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Through grouping and sharing small quantities, pupils begin to understand: multiplication and division; doubling numbers and quantities; and finding simple fractions of objects, numbers and quantities.

They make connections between arrays, number patterns, and counting in twos, fives and tens.

## Number – fractions

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise, find and name a half as one of two equal parts of an object, shape or quantity
- recognise, find and name a quarter as one of four equal parts of an object, shape or quantity.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils are taught half and quarter as ‘fractions of’ discrete and continuous quantities by solving problems using shapes, objects and quantities. For example, they could recognise and find half a length, quantity, set of objects or shape. Pupils connect halves and quarters to the equal sharing and grouping of sets of objects and to measures, as well as recognising and combining halves and quarters as parts of a whole.

**Measurement****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare, describe and solve practical problems for:
  - lengths and heights [for example, long/short, longer/shorter, tall/short, double/half]
  - mass/weight [for example, heavy/light, heavier than, lighter than]
  - capacity and volume [for example, full/empty, more than, less than, half, half full, quarter]
  - time [for example, quicker, slower, earlier, later]
- measure and begin to record the following:
  - lengths and heights
  - mass/weight
  - capacity and volume
  - time (hours, minutes, seconds)
- recognise and know the value of different denominations of coins and notes
- sequence events in chronological order using language [for example, before and after, next, first, today, yesterday, tomorrow, morning, afternoon and evening]
- recognise and use language relating to dates, including days of the week, weeks, months and years
- tell the time to the hour and half past the hour and draw the hands on a clock face to show these times.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

The pairs of terms: mass and weight, volume and capacity, are used interchangeably at this stage.

Pupils move from using and comparing different types of quantities and measures using non-standard units, including discrete (for example, counting) and continuous (for example, liquid) measurement, to using manageable common standard units.

In order to become familiar with standard measures, pupils begin to use measuring tools such as a ruler, weighing scales and containers.

Pupils use the language of time, including telling the time throughout the day, first using o'clock and then half past.

**Geometry – properties of shapes****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise and name common 2-D and 3-D shapes, including:
  - 2-D shapes [for example, rectangles (including squares), circles and triangles]
  - 3-D shapes [for example, cuboids (including cubes), pyramids and spheres].

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils handle common 2-D and 3-D shapes, naming these and related everyday objects fluently. They recognise these shapes in different orientations and sizes, and know that rectangles, triangles, cuboids and pyramids are not always similar to each other.

**Geometry – position and direction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe position, direction and movement, including whole, half, quarter and three-quarter turns.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils use the language of position, direction and motion, including: left and right, top, middle and bottom, on top of, in front of, above, between, around, near, close and far, up and down, forwards and backwards, inside and outside.

Pupils make whole, half, quarter and three-quarter turns in both directions and connect turning clockwise with movement on a clock face.

## Year 2 programme of study

### Number – number and place value

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- count in steps of 2, 3, and 5 from 0, and in tens from any number, forward and backward
- recognise the place value of each digit in a two-digit number (tens, ones)
- identify, represent and estimate numbers using different representations, including the number line
- compare and order numbers from 0 up to 100; use  $<$ ,  $>$  and  $=$  signs
- read and write numbers to at least 100 in numerals and in words
- use place value and number facts to solve problems.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Using materials and a range of representations, pupils practise counting, reading, writing and comparing numbers to at least 100 and solving a variety of related problems to develop fluency. They count in multiples of three to support their later understanding of a third.

As they become more confident with numbers up to 100, pupils are introduced to larger numbers to develop further their recognition of patterns within the number system and represent them in different ways, including spatial representations.

Pupils should partition numbers in different ways (for example,  $23 = 20 + 3$  and  $23 = 10 + 13$ ) to support subtraction. They become fluent and apply their knowledge of numbers to reason with, discuss and solve problems that emphasise the value of each digit in two-digit numbers. They begin to understand zero as a place holder.

**Number – addition and subtraction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- solve problems with addition and subtraction:
  - using concrete objects and pictorial representations, including those involving numbers, quantities and measures
  - applying their increasing knowledge of mental and written methods
- recall and use addition and subtraction facts to 20 fluently, and derive and use related facts up to 100
- add and subtract numbers using concrete objects, pictorial representations, and mentally, including:
  - a two-digit number and ones
  - a two-digit number and tens
  - two two-digit numbers
  - adding three one-digit numbers
- show that addition of two numbers can be done in any order (commutative) and subtraction of one number from another cannot
- recognise and use the inverse relationship between addition and subtraction and use this to check calculations and solve missing number problems.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils extend their understanding of the language of addition and subtraction to include sum and difference.

Pupils practise addition and subtraction to 20 to become increasingly fluent in deriving facts such as using  $3 + 7 = 10$ ;  $10 - 7 = 3$  and  $7 = 10 - 3$  to calculate  $30 + 70 = 100$ ;  $100 - 70 = 30$  and  $70 = 100 - 30$ . They check their calculations, including by adding to check subtraction and adding numbers in a different order to check addition (for example,  $5 + 2 + 1 = 1 + 5 + 2 = 1 + 2 + 5$ ). This establishes commutativity and associativity of addition.

Recording addition and subtraction in columns supports place value and prepares for formal written methods with larger numbers.

## Number – multiplication and division

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recall and use multiplication and division facts for the 2, 5 and 10 multiplication tables, including recognising odd and even numbers
- calculate mathematical statements for multiplication and division within the multiplication tables and write them using the multiplication ( $\times$ ), division ( $\div$ ) and equals (=) signs
- show that multiplication of two numbers can be done in any order (commutative) and division of one number by another cannot
- solve problems involving multiplication and division, using materials, arrays, repeated addition, mental methods, and multiplication and division facts, including problems in contexts.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils use a variety of language to describe multiplication and division.

Pupils are introduced to the multiplication tables. They practise to become fluent in the 2, 5 and 10 multiplication tables and connect them to each other. They connect the 10 multiplication table to place value, and the 5 multiplication table to the divisions on the clock face. They begin to use other multiplication tables and recall multiplication facts, including using related division facts to perform written and mental calculations.

Pupils work with a range of materials and contexts in which multiplication and division relate to grouping and sharing discrete and continuous quantities, to arrays and to repeated addition. They begin to relate these to fractions and measures (for example,  $40 \div 2 = 20$ , 20 is a half of 40). They use commutativity and inverse relations to develop multiplicative reasoning (for example,  $4 \times 5 = 20$  and  $20 \div 5 = 4$ ).

## Number – fractions

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise, find, name and write fractions  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{2}{4}$  and  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a length, shape, set of objects or quantity
- write simple fractions for example,  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 6 = 3 and recognise the equivalence of  $\frac{2}{4}$  and  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils use fractions as ‘fractions of’ discrete and continuous quantities by solving problems using shapes, objects and quantities. They connect unit fractions to equal sharing and grouping, to numbers when they can be calculated, and to measures, finding fractions of lengths, quantities, sets of objects or shapes. They meet  $\frac{3}{4}$  as the first example of a non-unit fraction.

Pupils should count in fractions up to 10, starting from any number and using the  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{2}{4}$  equivalence on the number line (for example,  $1\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $1\frac{2}{4}$  (or  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ),  $1\frac{3}{4}$ , 2). This reinforces the concept of fractions as numbers and that they can add up to more than one.

## Measurement

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- choose and use appropriate standard units to estimate and measure length/height in any direction (m/cm); mass (kg/g); temperature (°C); capacity (litres/ml) to the nearest appropriate unit, using rulers, scales, thermometers and measuring vessels
- compare and order lengths, mass, volume/capacity and record the results using  $>$ ,  $<$  and  $=$
- recognise and use symbols for pounds (£) and pence (p); combine amounts to make a particular value
- find different combinations of coins that equal the same amounts of money
- solve simple problems in a practical context involving addition and subtraction of money of the same unit, including giving change
- compare and sequence intervals of time
- tell and write the time to five minutes, including quarter past/to the hour and draw the hands on a clock face to show these times
- know the number of minutes in an hour and the number of hours in a day.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils use standard units of measurement with increasing accuracy, using their knowledge of the number system. They use the appropriate language and record using standard abbreviations.

Comparing measures includes simple multiples such as 'half as high'; 'twice as wide'.

They become fluent in telling the time on analogue clocks and recording it.

Pupils become fluent in counting and recognising coins. They read and say amounts of money confidently and use the symbols £ and p accurately, recording pounds and pence separately.

## Geometry – properties of shapes

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and describe the properties of 2-D shapes, including the number of sides and line symmetry in a vertical line
- identify and describe the properties of 3-D shapes, including the number of edges, vertices and faces
- identify 2-D shapes on the surface of 3-D shapes [for example, a circle on a cylinder and a triangle on a pyramid]
- compare and sort common 2-D and 3-D shapes and everyday objects.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils handle and name a wide variety of common 2-D and 3-D shapes including: quadrilaterals and polygons, and cuboids, prisms and cones, and identify the properties of each shape (for example, number of sides, number of faces). Pupils identify, compare and sort shapes on the basis of their properties and use vocabulary precisely, such as sides, edges, vertices and faces.

Pupils read and write names for shapes that are appropriate for their word reading and spelling.

Pupils draw lines and shapes using a straight edge.



**Geometry – position and direction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- order and arrange combinations of mathematical objects in patterns and sequences
- use mathematical vocabulary to describe position, direction and movement, including movement in a straight line and distinguishing between rotation as a turn and in terms of right angles for quarter, half and three-quarter turns (clockwise and anti-clockwise).

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should work with patterns of shapes, including those in different orientations.

Pupils use the concept and language of angles to describe 'turn' by applying rotations, including in practical contexts (for example, pupils themselves moving in turns, giving instructions to other pupils to do so, and programming robots using instructions given in right angles).

**Statistics****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- interpret and construct simple pictograms, tally charts, block diagrams and simple tables
- ask and answer simple questions by counting the number of objects in each category and sorting the categories by quantity
- ask and answer questions about totalling and comparing categorical data.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils record, interpret, collate, organise and compare information (for example, using many-to-one correspondence in pictograms with simple ratios 2, 5, 10).

## Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4

The principal focus of mathematics teaching in lower key stage 2 is to ensure that pupils become increasingly fluent with whole numbers and the four operations, including number facts and the concept of place value. This should ensure that pupils develop efficient written and mental methods and perform calculations accurately with increasingly large whole numbers.

At this stage, pupils should develop their ability to solve a range of problems, including with simple fractions and decimal place value. Teaching should also ensure that pupils draw with increasing accuracy and develop mathematical reasoning so they can analyse shapes and their properties, and confidently describe the relationships between them. It should ensure that they can use measuring instruments with accuracy and make connections between measure and number.

By the end of year 4, pupils should have memorised their multiplication tables up to and including the 12 multiplication table and show precision and fluency in their work.

Pupils should read and spell mathematical vocabulary correctly and confidently, using their growing word reading knowledge and their knowledge of spelling.

## Year 3 programme of study

### Number – number and place value

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- count from 0 in multiples of 4, 8, 50 and 100; find 10 or 100 more or less than a given number
- recognise the place value of each digit in a three-digit number (hundreds, tens, ones)
- compare and order numbers up to 1000
- identify, represent and estimate numbers using different representations
- read and write numbers up to 1000 in numerals and in words
- solve number problems and practical problems involving these ideas.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils now use multiples of 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 10, 50 and 100.

They use larger numbers to at least 1000, applying partitioning related to place value using varied and increasingly complex problems, building on work in year 2 (for example,  $146 = 100 + 40 + 6$ ,  $146 = 130 + 16$ ).

Using a variety of representations, including those related to measure, pupils continue to count in ones, tens and hundreds, so that they become fluent in the order and place value of numbers to 1000.

**Number – addition and subtraction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- add and subtract numbers mentally, including:
  - a three-digit number and ones
  - a three-digit number and tens
  - a three-digit number and hundreds
- add and subtract numbers with up to three digits, using formal written methods of columnar addition and subtraction
- estimate the answer to a calculation and use inverse operations to check answers
- solve problems, including missing number problems, using number facts, place value, and more complex addition and subtraction.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils practise solving varied addition and subtraction questions. For mental calculations with two-digit numbers, the answers could exceed 100.

Pupils use their understanding of place value and partitioning, and practise using columnar addition and subtraction with increasingly large numbers up to three digits to become fluent (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)).

**Number – multiplication and division****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- recall and use multiplication and division facts for the 3, 4 and 8 multiplication tables
- write and calculate mathematical statements for multiplication and division using the multiplication tables that they know, including for two-digit numbers times one-digit numbers, using mental and progressing to formal written methods
- solve problems, including missing number problems, involving multiplication and division, including positive integer scaling problems and correspondence problems in which  $n$  objects are connected to  $m$  objects.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils continue to practise their mental recall of multiplication tables when they are calculating mathematical statements in order to improve fluency. Through doubling, they connect the 2, 4 and 8 multiplication tables.

Pupils develop efficient mental methods, for example, using commutativity and associativity (for example,  $4 \times 12 \times 5 = 4 \times 5 \times 12 = 20 \times 12 = 240$ ) and multiplication and division facts (for example, using  $3 \times 2 = 6$ ,  $6 \div 3 = 2$  and  $2 = 6 \div 3$ ) to derive related facts (for example,  $30 \times 2 = 60$ ,  $60 \div 3 = 20$  and  $20 = 60 \div 3$ ).

Pupils develop reliable written methods for multiplication and division, starting with calculations of two-digit numbers by one-digit numbers and progressing to the formal written methods of short multiplication and division.

Pupils solve simple problems in contexts, deciding which of the four operations to use and why. These include measuring and scaling contexts, (for example, four times as high, eight times as long etc.) and correspondence problems in which  $m$  objects are connected to  $n$  objects (for example, 3 hats and 4 coats, how many different outfits?; 12 sweets shared equally between 4 children; 4 cakes shared equally between 8 children).

**Number – fractions****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- count up and down in tenths; recognise that tenths arise from dividing an object into 10 equal parts and in dividing one-digit numbers or quantities by 10
- recognise, find and write fractions of a discrete set of objects: unit fractions and non-unit fractions with small denominators
- recognise and use fractions as numbers: unit fractions and non-unit fractions with small denominators
- recognise and show, using diagrams, equivalent fractions with small denominators
- add and subtract fractions with the same denominator within one whole [for example,  $\frac{5}{7} + \frac{1}{7} = \frac{6}{7}$ ]
- compare and order unit fractions, and fractions with the same denominators
- solve problems that involve all of the above.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils connect tenths to place value, decimal measures and to division by 10.

They begin to understand unit and non-unit fractions as numbers on the number line, and deduce relations between them, such as size and equivalence. They should go beyond the  $[0, 1]$  interval, including relating this to measure.

Pupils understand the relation between unit fractions as operators (fractions of), and division by integers.

They continue to recognise fractions in the context of parts of a whole, numbers, measurements, a shape, and unit fractions as a division of a quantity.

Pupils practise adding and subtracting fractions with the same denominator through a variety of increasingly complex problems to improve fluency.

## Measurement

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- measure, compare, add and subtract: lengths (m/cm/mm); mass (kg/g); volume/capacity (l/ml)
- measure the perimeter of simple 2-D shapes
- add and subtract amounts of money to give change, using both £ and p in practical contexts
- tell and write the time from an analogue clock, including using Roman numerals from I to XII, and 12-hour and 24-hour clocks
- estimate and read time with increasing accuracy to the nearest minute; record and compare time in terms of seconds, minutes and hours; use vocabulary such as o'clock, a.m./p.m., morning, afternoon, noon and midnight
- know the number of seconds in a minute and the number of days in each month, year and leap year
- compare durations of events [for example to calculate the time taken by particular events or tasks].

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils continue to measure using the appropriate tools and units, progressing to using a wider range of measures, including comparing and using mixed units (for example, 1 kg and 200g) and simple equivalents of mixed units (for example, 5m = 500cm).

The comparison of measures includes simple scaling by integers (for example, a given quantity or measure is twice as long or five times as high) and this connects to multiplication.

Pupils continue to become fluent in recognising the value of coins, by adding and subtracting amounts, including mixed units, and giving change using manageable amounts. They record £ and p separately. The decimal recording of money is introduced formally in year 4.

Pupils use both analogue and digital 12-hour clocks and record their times. In this way they become fluent in and prepared for using digital 24-hour clocks in year 4.

## Geometry – properties of shapes

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- draw 2-D shapes and make 3-D shapes using modelling materials; recognise 3-D shapes in different orientations and describe them
- recognise angles as a property of shape or a description of a turn
- identify right angles, recognise that two right angles make a half-turn, three make three quarters of a turn and four a complete turn; identify whether angles are greater than or less than a right angle
- identify horizontal and vertical lines and pairs of perpendicular and parallel lines.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils' knowledge of the properties of shapes is extended at this stage to symmetrical and non-symmetrical polygons and polyhedra. Pupils extend their use of the properties of shapes. They should be able to describe the properties of 2-D and 3-D shapes using accurate language, including lengths of lines and acute and obtuse for angles greater or lesser than a right angle.

Pupils connect decimals and rounding to drawing and measuring straight lines in centimetres, in a variety of contexts.

## Statistics

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- interpret and present data using bar charts, pictograms and tables
- solve one-step and two-step questions [for example, 'How many more?' and 'How many fewer?'] using information presented in scaled bar charts and pictograms and tables.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils understand and use simple scales (for example, 2, 5, 10 units per cm) in pictograms and bar charts with increasing accuracy.

They continue to interpret data presented in many contexts.



## Year 4 programme of study

### Number – number and place value

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to

- count in multiples of 6, 7, 9, 25 and 1000
- find 1000 more or less than a given number
- count backwards through zero to include negative numbers
- recognise the place value of each digit in a four-digit number (thousands, hundreds, tens, and ones)
- order and compare numbers beyond 1000
- identify, represent and estimate numbers using different representations
- round any number to the nearest 10, 100 or 1000
- solve number and practical problems that involve all of the above and with increasingly large positive numbers
- read Roman numerals to 100 (I to C) and know that over time, the numeral system changed to include the concept of zero and place value.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Using a variety of representations, including measures, pupils become fluent in the order and place value of numbers beyond 1000, including counting in tens and hundreds, and maintaining fluency in other multiples through varied and frequent practice.

They begin to extend their knowledge of the number system to include the decimal numbers and fractions that they have met so far.

They connect estimation and rounding numbers to the use of measuring instruments.

Roman numerals should be put in their historical context so pupils understand that there have been different ways to write whole numbers and that the important concepts of zero and place value were introduced over a period of time.

**Number – addition and subtraction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- add and subtract numbers with up to 4 digits using the formal written methods of columnar addition and subtraction where appropriate
- estimate and use inverse operations to check answers to a calculation
- solve addition and subtraction two-step problems in contexts, deciding which operations and methods to use and why.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils continue to practise both mental methods and columnar addition and subtraction with increasingly large numbers to aid fluency (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)).

**Number – multiplication and division****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- recall multiplication and division facts for multiplication tables up to  $12 \times 12$
- use place value, known and derived facts to multiply and divide mentally, including: multiplying by 0 and 1; dividing by 1; multiplying together three numbers
- recognise and use factor pairs and commutativity in mental calculations
- multiply two-digit and three-digit numbers by a one-digit number using formal written layout
- solve problems involving multiplying and adding, including using the distributive law to multiply two digit numbers by one digit, integer scaling problems and harder correspondence problems such as  $n$  objects are connected to  $m$  objects.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils continue to practise recalling and using multiplication tables and related division facts to aid fluency.

Pupils practise mental methods and extend this to three-digit numbers to derive facts, (for example  $600 \div 3 = 200$  can be derived from  $2 \times 3 = 6$ ).

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils practise to become fluent in the formal written method of short multiplication and short division with exact answers (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)).

Pupils write statements about the equality of expressions (for example, use the distributive law  $39 \times 7 = 30 \times 7 + 9 \times 7$  and associative law  $(2 \times 3) \times 4 = 2 \times (3 \times 4)$ ).

They combine their knowledge of number facts and rules of arithmetic to solve mental and written calculations for example,  $2 \times 6 \times 5 = 10 \times 6 = 60$ .

Pupils solve two-step problems in contexts, choosing the appropriate operation, working with increasingly harder numbers. This should include correspondence questions such as the numbers of choices of a meal on a menu, or three cakes shared equally between 10 children.

**Number – fractions (including decimals)****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise and show, using diagrams, families of common equivalent fractions
- count up and down in hundredths; recognise that hundredths arise when dividing an object by one hundred and dividing tenths by ten
- solve problems involving increasingly harder fractions to calculate quantities, and fractions to divide quantities, including non-unit fractions where the answer is a whole number
- add and subtract fractions with the same denominator
- recognise and write decimal equivalents of any number of tenths or hundredths
- recognise and write decimal equivalents to  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$
- find the effect of dividing a one- or two-digit number by 10 and 100, identifying the value of the digits in the answer as ones, tenths and hundredths
- round decimals with one decimal place to the nearest whole number
- compare numbers with the same number of decimal places up to two decimal places
- solve simple measure and money problems involving fractions and decimals to two decimal places.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should connect hundredths to tenths and place value and decimal measure.

They extend the use of the number line to connect fractions, numbers and measures.

Pupils understand the relation between non-unit fractions and multiplication and division of quantities, with particular emphasis on tenths and hundredths.

Pupils make connections between fractions of a length, of a shape and as a representation of one whole or set of quantities. Pupils use factors and multiples to recognise equivalent fractions and simplify where appropriate (for example,  $\frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{4} = \frac{2}{8}$ ).

Pupils continue to practise adding and subtracting fractions with the same denominator, to become fluent through a variety of increasingly complex problems beyond one whole.

Pupils are taught throughout that decimals and fractions are different ways of expressing numbers and proportions.

Pupils' understanding of the number system and decimal place value is extended at this stage to tenths and then hundredths. This includes relating the decimal notation to division of whole number by 10 and later 100.

They practise counting using simple fractions and decimals, both forwards and backwards.

Pupils learn decimal notation and the language associated with it, including in the context of measurements. They make comparisons and order decimal amounts and quantities that are expressed to the same number of decimal places. They should be able to represent numbers with one or two decimal places in several ways, such as on number lines.

**Measurement****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- Convert between different units of measure [for example, kilometre to metre; hour to minute]
- measure and calculate the perimeter of a rectilinear figure (including squares) in centimetres and metres
- find the area of rectilinear shapes by counting squares
- estimate, compare and calculate different measures, including money in pounds and pence

### Statutory requirements

- read, write and convert time between analogue and digital 12- and 24-hour clocks
- solve problems involving converting from hours to minutes; minutes to seconds; years to months; weeks to days.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils build on their understanding of place value and decimal notation to record metric measures, including money.

They use multiplication to convert from larger to smaller units.

Perimeter can be expressed algebraically as  $2(a + b)$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are the dimensions in the same unit.

They relate area to arrays and multiplication.

## Geometry – properties of shapes

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare and classify geometric shapes, including quadrilaterals and triangles, based on their properties and sizes
- identify acute and obtuse angles and compare and order angles up to two right angles by size
- identify lines of symmetry in 2-D shapes presented in different orientations
- complete a simple symmetric figure with respect to a specific line of symmetry.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils continue to classify shapes using geometrical properties, extending to classifying different triangles (for example, isosceles, equilateral, scalene) and quadrilaterals (for example, parallelogram, rhombus, trapezium).

Pupils compare and order angles in preparation for using a protractor and compare lengths and angles to decide if a polygon is regular or irregular.

Pupils draw symmetric patterns using a variety of media to become familiar with different orientations of lines of symmetry; and recognise line symmetry in a variety of diagrams, including where the line of symmetry does not dissect the original shape.

## Geometry – position and direction

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe positions on a 2-D grid as coordinates in the first quadrant
- describe movements between positions as translations of a given unit to the left/right and up/down
- plot specified points and draw sides to complete a given polygon.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils draw a pair of axes in one quadrant, with equal scales and integer labels. They read, write and use pairs of coordinates, for example (2, 5), including using coordinate-plotting ICT tools.

## Statistics

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- interpret and present discrete and continuous data using appropriate graphical methods, including bar charts and time graphs.
- solve comparison, sum and difference problems using information presented in bar charts, pictograms, tables and other graphs.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils understand and use a greater range of scales in their representations.

Pupils begin to relate the graphical representation of data to recording change over time.

## Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6

The principal focus of mathematics teaching in upper key stage 2 is to ensure that pupils extend their understanding of the number system and place value to include larger integers. This should develop the connections that pupils make between multiplication and division with fractions, decimals, percentages and ratio.

At this stage, pupils should develop their ability to solve a wider range of problems, including increasingly complex properties of numbers and arithmetic, and problems demanding efficient written and mental methods of calculation. With this foundation in arithmetic, pupils are introduced to the language of algebra as a means for solving a variety of problems. Teaching in geometry and measures should consolidate and extend knowledge developed in number. Teaching should also ensure that pupils classify shapes with increasingly complex geometric properties and that they learn the vocabulary they need to describe them.

By the end of year 6, pupils should be fluent in written methods for all four operations, including long multiplication and division, and in working with fractions, decimals and percentages.

Pupils should read, spell and pronounce mathematical vocabulary correctly.

## Year 5 programme of study

### Number – number and place value

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- read, write, order and compare numbers to at least 1 000 000 and determine the value of each digit
- count forwards or backwards in steps of powers of 10 for any given number up to 1 000 000
- interpret negative numbers in context, count forwards and backwards with positive and negative whole numbers, including through zero
- round any number up to 1 000 000 to the nearest 10, 100, 1000, 10 000 and 100 000
- solve number problems and practical problems that involve all of the above
- read Roman numerals to 1000 (M) and recognise years written in Roman numerals.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils identify the place value in large whole numbers.

They continue to use number in context, including measurement. Pupils extend and apply their understanding of the number system to the decimal numbers and fractions that they have met so far.

They should recognise and describe linear number sequences, including those involving fractions and decimals, and find the term-to-term rule.

They should recognise and describe linear number sequences (for example, 3,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , 4,  $4\frac{1}{2}$ ...), including those involving fractions and decimals, and find the term-to-term rule in words (for example, add  $\frac{1}{2}$ ).



**Number – addition and subtraction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- add and subtract whole numbers with more than 4 digits, including using formal written methods (columnar addition and subtraction)
- add and subtract numbers mentally with increasingly large numbers
- use rounding to check answers to calculations and determine, in the context of a problem, levels of accuracy
- solve addition and subtraction multi-step problems in contexts, deciding which operations and methods to use and why.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils practise using the formal written methods of columnar addition and subtraction with increasingly large numbers to aid fluency (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)).

They practise mental calculations with increasingly large numbers to aid fluency (for example,  $12\,462 - 2300 = 10\,162$ ).

**Number – multiplication and division****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify multiples and factors, including finding all factor pairs of a number, and common factors of two numbers
- know and use the vocabulary of prime numbers, prime factors and composite (non-prime) numbers
- establish whether a number up to 100 is prime and recall prime numbers up to 19
- multiply numbers up to 4 digits by a one- or two-digit number using a formal written method, including long multiplication for two-digit numbers
- multiply and divide numbers mentally drawing upon known facts
- divide numbers up to 4 digits by a one-digit number using the formal written method of short division and interpret remainders appropriately for the context
- multiply and divide whole numbers and those involving decimals by 10, 100 and 1000

**Statutory requirements**

- recognise and use square numbers and cube numbers, and the notation for squared ( $^2$ ) and cubed ( $^3$ )
- solve problems involving multiplication and division including using their knowledge of factors and multiples, squares and cubes
- solve problems involving addition, subtraction, multiplication and division and a combination of these, including understanding the meaning of the equals sign
- solve problems involving multiplication and division, including scaling by simple fractions and problems involving simple rates.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils practise and extend their use of the formal written methods of short multiplication and short division (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)). They apply all the multiplication tables and related division facts frequently, commit them to memory and use them confidently to make larger calculations.

They use and understand the terms factor, multiple and prime, square and cube numbers.

Pupils interpret non-integer answers to division by expressing results in different ways according to the context, including with remainders, as fractions, as decimals or by rounding (for example,  $98 \div 4 = \frac{98}{4} = 24 \text{ r } 2 = 24\frac{1}{2} = 24.5 \approx 25$ ).

Pupils use multiplication and division as inverses to support the introduction of ratio in year 6, for example, by multiplying and dividing by powers of 10 in scale drawings or by multiplying and dividing by powers of a 1000 in converting between units such as kilometres and metres.

Distributivity can be expressed as  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ .

They understand the terms factor, multiple and prime, square and cube numbers and use them to construct equivalence statements (for example,  $4 \times 35 = 2 \times 2 \times 35$ ;  $3 \times 270 = 3 \times 3 \times 9 \times 10 = 9^2 \times 10$ ).

Pupils use and explain the equals sign to indicate equivalence, including in missing number problems (for example,  $13 + 24 = 12 + 25$ ;  $33 = 5 \times \square$ ).

## Number – fractions (including decimals and percentages)

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare and order fractions whose denominators are all multiples of the same number
- identify, name and write equivalent fractions of a given fraction, represented visually, including tenths and hundredths
- recognise mixed numbers and improper fractions and convert from one form to the other and write mathematical statements  $> 1$  as a mixed number [for example,  $\frac{2}{5} + \frac{4}{5} = \frac{6}{5} = 1\frac{1}{5}$ ]
- add and subtract fractions with the same denominator and denominators that are multiples of the same number
- multiply proper fractions and mixed numbers by whole numbers, supported by materials and diagrams
- read and write decimal numbers as fractions [for example,  $0.71 = \frac{71}{100}$ ]
- recognise and use thousandths and relate them to tenths, hundredths and decimal equivalents
- round decimals with two decimal places to the nearest whole number and to one decimal place
- read, write, order and compare numbers with up to three decimal places
- solve problems involving number up to three decimal places
- recognise the per cent symbol (%) and understand that per cent relates to ‘number of parts per hundred’, and write percentages as a fraction with denominator 100, and as a decimal
- solve problems which require knowing percentage and decimal equivalents of  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{5}$ ,  $\frac{2}{5}$ ,  $\frac{4}{5}$  and those fractions with a denominator of a multiple of 10 or 25.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be taught throughout that percentages, decimals and fractions are different ways of expressing proportions.

They extend their knowledge of fractions to thousandths and connect to decimals and measures.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils connect equivalent fractions  $> 1$  that simplify to integers with division and other fractions  $> 1$  to division with remainders, using the number line and other models, and hence move from these to improper and mixed fractions.

Pupils connect multiplication by a fraction to using fractions as operators (fractions of), and to division, building on work from previous years. This relates to scaling by simple fractions, including fractions  $> 1$ .

Pupils practise adding and subtracting fractions to become fluent through a variety of increasingly complex problems. They extend their understanding of adding and subtracting fractions to calculations that exceed 1 as a mixed number.

Pupils continue to practise counting forwards and backwards in simple fractions.

Pupils continue to develop their understanding of fractions as numbers, measures and operators by finding fractions of numbers and quantities.

Pupils extend counting from year 4, using decimals and fractions including bridging zero, for example on a number line.

Pupils say, read and write decimal fractions and related tenths, hundredths and thousandths accurately and are confident in checking the reasonableness of their answers to problems.

They mentally add and subtract tenths, and one-digit whole numbers and tenths.

They practise adding and subtracting decimals, including a mix of whole numbers and decimals, decimals with different numbers of decimal places, and complements of 1 (for example,  $0.83 + 0.17 = 1$ ).

Pupils should go beyond the measurement and money models of decimals, for example, by solving puzzles involving decimals.

Pupils should make connections between percentages, fractions and decimals (for example, 100% represents a whole quantity and 1% is  $\frac{1}{100}$ , 50% is  $\frac{50}{100}$ , 25% is  $\frac{25}{100}$ ) and relate this to finding 'fractions of'.

**Measurement****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- convert between different units of metric measure (for example, kilometre and metre; centimetre and metre; centimetre and millimetre; gram and kilogram; litre and millilitre)
- understand and use approximate equivalences between metric units and common imperial units such as inches, pounds and pints
- measure and calculate the perimeter of composite rectilinear shapes in centimetres and metres
- calculate and compare the area of rectangles (including squares), and including using standard units, square centimetres (cm<sup>2</sup>) and square metres (m<sup>2</sup>) and estimate the area of irregular shapes
- estimate volume [for example, using 1 cm<sup>3</sup> blocks to build cuboids (including cubes)] and capacity [for example, using water]
- solve problems involving converting between units of time
- use all four operations to solve problems involving measure [for example, length, mass, volume, money] using decimal notation, including scaling.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils use their knowledge of place value and multiplication and division to convert between standard units.

Pupils calculate the perimeter of rectangles and related composite shapes, including using the relations of perimeter or area to find unknown lengths. Missing measures questions such as these can be expressed algebraically, for example  $4 + 2b = 20$  for a rectangle of sides 2 cm and  $b$  cm and perimeter of 20cm.

Pupils calculate the area from scale drawings using given measurements.

Pupils use all four operations in problems involving time and money, including conversions (for example, days to weeks, expressing the answer as weeks and days).

**Geometry – properties of shapes****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify 3-D shapes, including cubes and other cuboids, from 2-D representations
- know angles are measured in degrees: estimate and compare acute, obtuse and reflex angles
- draw given angles, and measure them in degrees ( $^{\circ}$ )
- identify:
  - angles at a point and one whole turn (total  $360^{\circ}$ )
  - angles at a point on a straight line and  $\frac{1}{2}$  a turn (total  $180^{\circ}$ )
  - other multiples of  $90^{\circ}$
- use the properties of rectangles to deduce related facts and find missing lengths and angles
- distinguish between regular and irregular polygons based on reasoning about equal sides and angles.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils become accurate in drawing lines with a ruler to the nearest millimetre, and measuring with a protractor. They use conventional markings for parallel lines and right angles.

Pupils use the term diagonal and make conjectures about the angles formed between sides, and between diagonals and parallel sides, and other properties of quadrilaterals, for example using dynamic geometry ICT tools.

Pupils use angle sum facts and other properties to make deductions about missing angles and relate these to missing number problems.

**Geometry – position and direction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify, describe and represent the position of a shape following a reflection or translation, using the appropriate language, and know that the shape has not changed.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils recognise and use reflection and translation in a variety of diagrams, including continuing to use a 2-D grid and coordinates in the first quadrant. Reflection should be in lines that are parallel to the axes.

**Statistics**

**Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- solve comparison, sum and difference problems using information presented in a line graph
- complete, read and interpret information in tables, including timetables.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils connect their work on coordinates and scales to their interpretation of time graphs.

They begin to decide which representations of data are most appropriate and why.

## Year 6 programme of study

### Number – number and place value

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- read, write, order and compare numbers up to 10 000 000 and determine the value of each digit
- round any whole number to a required degree of accuracy
- use negative numbers in context, and calculate intervals across zero
- solve number and practical problems that involve all of the above.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils use the whole number system, including saying, reading and writing numbers accurately.

### Number – addition, subtraction, multiplication and division

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- multiply multi-digit numbers up to 4 digits by a two-digit whole number using the formal written method of long multiplication
- divide numbers up to 4 digits by a two-digit whole number using the formal written method of long division, and interpret remainders as whole number remainders, fractions, or by rounding, as appropriate for the context
- divide numbers up to 4 digits by a two-digit number using the formal written method of short division where appropriate, interpreting remainders according to the context
- perform mental calculations, including with mixed operations and large numbers
- identify common factors, common multiples and prime numbers
- use their knowledge of the order of operations to carry out calculations involving the four operations
- solve addition and subtraction multi-step problems in contexts, deciding which operations and methods to use and why



**Statutory requirements**

- solve problems involving addition, subtraction, multiplication and division
- use estimation to check answers to calculations and determine, in the context of a problem, an appropriate degree of accuracy.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils practise addition, subtraction, multiplication and division for larger numbers, using the formal written methods of columnar addition and subtraction, short and long multiplication, and short and long division (see [Mathematics Appendix 1](#)).

They undertake mental calculations with increasingly large numbers and more complex calculations.

Pupils continue to use all the multiplication tables to calculate mathematical statements in order to maintain their fluency.

Pupils round answers to a specified degree of accuracy, for example, to the nearest 10, 20, 50 etc., but not to a specified number of significant figures.

Pupils explore the order of operations using brackets; for example,  $2 + 1 \times 3 = 5$  and  $(2 + 1) \times 3 = 9$ .

Common factors can be related to finding equivalent fractions.

**Number – fractions (including decimals and percentages)****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- use common factors to simplify fractions; use common multiples to express fractions in the same denomination
- compare and order fractions, including fractions  $> 1$
- add and subtract fractions with different denominators and mixed numbers, using the concept of equivalent fractions
- multiply simple pairs of proper fractions, writing the answer in its simplest form [for example,  $\frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8}$ ]
- divide proper fractions by whole numbers [for example,  $\frac{1}{3} \div 2 = \frac{1}{6}$ ]
- associate a fraction with division and calculate decimal fraction equivalents [for example, 0.375] for a simple fraction [for example,  $\frac{3}{8}$ ]
- identify the value of each digit in numbers given to three decimal places and multiply and divide numbers by 10, 100 and 1000 giving answers up to three decimal places

**Statutory requirements**

- multiply one-digit numbers with up to two decimal places by whole numbers
- use written division methods in cases where the answer has up to two decimal places
- solve problems which require answers to be rounded to specified degrees of accuracy
- recall and use equivalences between simple fractions, decimals and percentages, including in different contexts.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should practise, use and understand the addition and subtraction of fractions with different denominators by identifying equivalent fractions with the same denominator. They should start with fractions where the denominator of one fraction is a multiple of the other (for example,  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{5}{8}$ ) and progress to varied and increasingly complex problems.

Pupils should use a variety of images to support their understanding of multiplication with fractions. This follows earlier work about fractions as operators (fractions of), as numbers, and as equal parts of objects, for example as parts of a rectangle.

Pupils use their understanding of the relationship between unit fractions and division to work backwards by multiplying a quantity that represents a unit fraction to find the whole quantity (for example, if  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a length is 36cm, then the whole length is  $36 \times 4 = 144$ cm).

They practise calculations with simple fractions and decimal fraction equivalents to aid fluency, including listing equivalent fractions to identify fractions with common denominators.

Pupils can explore and make conjectures about converting a simple fraction to a decimal fraction (for example,  $3 \div 8 = 0.375$ ). For simple fractions with recurring decimal equivalents, pupils learn about rounding the decimal to three decimal places, or other appropriate approximations depending on the context. Pupils multiply and divide numbers with up to two decimal places by one-digit and two-digit whole numbers. Pupils multiply decimals by whole numbers, starting with the simplest cases, such as  $0.4 \times 2 = 0.8$ , and in practical contexts, such as measures and money.

Pupils are introduced to the division of decimal numbers by one-digit whole number, initially, in practical contexts involving measures and money. They recognise division calculations as the inverse of multiplication.

Pupils also develop their skills of rounding and estimating as a means of predicting and checking the order of magnitude of their answers to decimal calculations. This includes rounding answers to a specified degree of accuracy and checking the reasonableness of their answers.

## Ratio and proportion

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- solve problems involving the relative sizes of two quantities where missing values can be found by using integer multiplication and division facts
- solve problems involving the calculation of percentages [for example, of measures, and such as 15% of 360] and the use of percentages for comparison
- solve problems involving similar shapes where the scale factor is known or can be found
- solve problems involving unequal sharing and grouping using knowledge of fractions and multiples.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils recognise proportionality in contexts when the relations between quantities are in the same ratio (for example, similar shapes and recipes).

Pupils link percentages or  $360^\circ$  to calculating angles of pie charts.

Pupils should consolidate their understanding of ratio when comparing quantities, sizes and scale drawings by solving a variety of problems. They might use the notation  $a:b$  to record their work.

Pupils solve problems involving unequal quantities, for example, 'for every egg you need three spoonfuls of flour', ' $\frac{3}{5}$  of the class are boys'. These problems are the foundation for later formal approaches to ratio and proportion.

## Algebra

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- use simple formulae
- generate and describe linear number sequences
- express missing number problems algebraically
- find pairs of numbers that satisfy an equation with two unknowns
- enumerate possibilities of combinations of two variables.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be introduced to the use of symbols and letters to represent variables and unknowns in mathematical situations that they already understand, such as:

- missing numbers, lengths, coordinates and angles
- formulae in mathematics and science
- equivalent expressions (for example,  $a + b = b + a$ )
- generalisations of number patterns
- number puzzles (for example, what two numbers can add up to).

## Measurement

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- solve problems involving the calculation and conversion of units of measure, using decimal notation up to three decimal places where appropriate
- use, read, write and convert between standard units, converting measurements of length, mass, volume and time from a smaller unit of measure to a larger unit, and vice versa, using decimal notation to up to three decimal places
- convert between miles and kilometres
- recognise that shapes with the same areas can have different perimeters and vice versa
- recognise when it is possible to use formulae for area and volume of shapes
- calculate the area of parallelograms and triangles
- calculate, estimate and compare volume of cubes and cuboids using standard units, including cubic centimetres ( $\text{cm}^3$ ) and cubic metres ( $\text{m}^3$ ), and extending to other units [for example,  $\text{mm}^3$  and  $\text{km}^3$ ].

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils connect conversion (for example, from kilometres to miles) to a graphical representation as preparation for understanding linear/proportional graphs.

They know approximate conversions and are able to tell if an answer is sensible.

Using the number line, pupils use, add and subtract positive and negative integers for measures such as temperature.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

They relate the area of rectangles to parallelograms and triangles, for example, by dissection, and calculate their areas, understanding and using the formulae (in words or symbols) to do this.

Pupils could be introduced to compound units for speed, such as miles per hour, and apply their knowledge in science or other subjects as appropriate.

## Geometry – properties of shapes

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- draw 2-D shapes using given dimensions and angles
- recognise, describe and build simple 3-D shapes, including making nets
- compare and classify geometric shapes based on their properties and sizes and find unknown angles in any triangles, quadrilaterals, and regular polygons
- illustrate and name parts of circles, including radius, diameter and circumference and know that the diameter is twice the radius
- recognise angles where they meet at a point, are on a straight line, or are vertically opposite, and find missing angles.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils draw shapes and nets accurately, using measuring tools and conventional markings and labels for lines and angles.

Pupils describe the properties of shapes and explain how unknown angles and lengths can be derived from known measurements.

These relationships might be expressed algebraically for example,  $d = 2 \times r$ ,  
 $a = 180 - (b + c)$ .

**Geometry – position and direction****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe positions on the full coordinate grid (all four quadrants)
- draw and translate simple shapes on the coordinate plane, and reflect them in the axes.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils draw and label a pair of axes in all four quadrants with equal scaling. This extends their knowledge of one quadrant to all four quadrants, including the use of negative numbers.

Pupils draw and label rectangles (including squares), parallelograms and rhombuses, specified by coordinates in the four quadrants, predicting missing coordinates using the properties of shapes. These might be expressed algebraically for example, translating vertex  $(a, b)$  to  $(a - 2, b + 3)$ ;  $(a, b)$  and  $(a + d, b + d)$  being opposite vertices of a square of side  $d$ .

**Statistics****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- interpret and construct pie charts and line graphs and use these to solve problems
- calculate and interpret the mean as an average.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils connect their work on angles, fractions and percentages to the interpretation of pie charts.

Pupils both encounter and draw graphs relating two variables, arising from their own enquiry and in other subjects.

They should connect conversion from kilometres to miles in measurement to its graphical representation.

Pupils know when it is appropriate to find the mean of a data set.

# Mathematics Appendix 1: Examples of formal written methods for addition, subtraction, multiplication and division

This appendix sets out some examples of formal written methods for all four operations to illustrate the range of methods that could be taught. It is not intended to be an exhaustive list, nor is it intended to show progression in formal written methods. For example, the exact position of intermediate calculations (superscript and subscript digits) will vary depending on the method and format used.

For multiplication, some pupils may include an addition symbol when adding partial products. For division, some pupils may include a subtraction symbol when subtracting multiples of the divisor.

## Addition and subtraction

789 + 642 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} 789 \\ + 642 \\ \hline 1431 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 1431

874 - 523 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} 874 \\ - 523 \\ \hline 351 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 351

932 - 457 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{0}^8 \phantom{0}^{12} \phantom{0}^1 \\ 932 \\ - 457 \\ \hline 475 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 475

932 - 457 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{0}^1 \phantom{0}^1 \\ 932 \\ - 457 \\ \hline 475 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 475

## Short multiplication

24 × 6 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} 24 \\ \times 6 \\ \hline 144 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 144

342 × 7 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} 342 \\ \times 7 \\ \hline 2394 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 2394

2741 × 6 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} 2741 \\ \times 6 \\ \hline 16446 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Answer: 16 446

Long multiplication

24 × 16 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{2} 2 \phantom{4} \\ \phantom{2} \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \\ \times \phantom{2} \mathbf{1} \phantom{4} \mathbf{6} \\ \hline \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{1} \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \mathbf{4} \\ \hline \mathbf{3} \phantom{4} \mathbf{8} \mathbf{4} \end{array}$$

Answer: 384

124 × 26 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \phantom{4} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{4} \\ \times \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{6} \\ \hline \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{8} \mathbf{0} \\ \phantom{2} \mathbf{7} \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \mathbf{4} \\ \hline \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{4} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \end{array}$$

Answer: 3224

124 × 26 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \phantom{4} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{4} \\ \times \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{6} \\ \hline \phantom{7} \mathbf{4} \mathbf{4} \\ \mathbf{2} \phantom{4} \mathbf{8} \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{4} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \phantom{1} \end{array}$$

Answer: 3224

Short division

98 ÷ 7 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{1} \phantom{4} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{1} \phantom{4} \\ 7 \overline{) \phantom{9} \mathbf{9} \phantom{8}} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{9} \phantom{8} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{8} \end{array}$$

Answer: 14

432 ÷ 5 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{8} \phantom{6} \text{ r } \mathbf{2} \\ \phantom{8} \phantom{6} \mathbf{8} \phantom{6} \text{ r } \mathbf{2} \\ 5 \overline{) \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \phantom{3} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2}} \\ \phantom{5} \mathbf{4} \phantom{3} \mathbf{2} \end{array}$$

Answer: 86 remainder 2

496 ÷ 11 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{4} \phantom{5} \text{ r } \mathbf{1} \\ \phantom{4} \phantom{5} \mathbf{4} \phantom{5} \text{ r } \mathbf{1} \\ 11 \overline{) \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \phantom{9} \mathbf{9} \phantom{6}} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{4} \phantom{9} \mathbf{6} \end{array}$$

Answer: 45  $\frac{1}{11}$

Long division

432 ÷ 15 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \text{ r } \mathbf{12} \\ \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \mathbf{2} \phantom{8} \text{ r } \mathbf{12} \\ 15 \overline{) \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \phantom{3} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2}} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{0} \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \end{array}$$

Answer: 28 remainder 12

432 ÷ 15 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \\ \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \mathbf{2} \phantom{8} \\ 15 \overline{) \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \phantom{3} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2}} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{0} \mathbf{0} \quad 15 \times 20 \\ \hline \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{0} \quad 15 \times 8 \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \end{array}$$

$$\frac{\cancel{12}}{\cancel{15}} = \frac{4}{5}$$

Answer: 28  $\frac{4}{5}$

432 ÷ 15 becomes

$$\begin{array}{r} \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \cdot \mathbf{8} \\ \phantom{2} \phantom{8} \mathbf{2} \phantom{8} \cdot \mathbf{8} \\ 15 \overline{) \phantom{4} \mathbf{4} \phantom{3} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \cdot \mathbf{0}} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \downarrow \\ \hline \phantom{1} \mathbf{3} \phantom{2} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{0} \downarrow \\ \hline \phantom{1} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{0} \\ \phantom{1} \mathbf{2} \mathbf{0} \downarrow \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{0} \\ \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \phantom{1} \phantom{2} \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Answer: 28.8



## Key stage 3

### Introduction

Mathematics is an interconnected subject in which pupils need to be able to move fluently between representations of mathematical ideas. The programme of study for key stage 3 is organised into apparently distinct domains, but pupils should build on key stage 2 and connections across mathematical ideas to develop fluency, mathematical reasoning and competence in solving increasingly sophisticated problems. They should also apply their mathematical knowledge in science, geography, computing and other subjects.

The expectation is that the majority of pupils will move through the programme of study at broadly the same pace. However, decisions about progression should be based on the security of pupils' understanding and their readiness to progress to the next stage. Pupils who grasp concepts rapidly should be challenged through being offered rich and sophisticated problems before any acceleration through new content in preparation for key stage 4. Those who are not sufficiently fluent should consolidate their understanding, including through additional practice, before moving on.

### Working mathematically

Through the mathematics content, pupils should be taught to:

#### Develop fluency

- consolidate their numerical and mathematical capability from key stage 2 and extend their understanding of the number system and place value to include decimals, fractions, powers and roots
- select and use appropriate calculation strategies to solve increasingly complex problems
- use algebra to generalise the structure of arithmetic, including to formulate mathematical relationships
- substitute values in expressions, rearrange and simplify expressions, and solve equations
- move freely between different numerical, algebraic, graphical and diagrammatic representations [for example, equivalent fractions, fractions and decimals, and equations and graphs]
- develop algebraic and graphical fluency, including understanding linear and simple quadratic functions
- use language and properties precisely to analyse numbers, algebraic expressions, 2-D and 3-D shapes, probability and statistics.

## Mathematics

### Reason mathematically

- extend their understanding of the number system; make connections between number relationships, and their algebraic and graphical representations
- extend and formalise their knowledge of ratio and proportion in working with measures and geometry, and in formulating proportional relations algebraically
- identify variables and express relations between variables algebraically and graphically
- make and test conjectures about patterns and relationships; look for proofs or counter-examples
- begin to reason deductively in geometry, number and algebra, including using geometrical constructions
- interpret when the structure of a numerical problem requires additive, multiplicative or proportional reasoning
- explore what can and cannot be inferred in statistical and probabilistic settings, and begin to express their arguments formally.

### Solve problems

- develop their mathematical knowledge, in part through solving problems and evaluating the outcomes, including multi-step problems
- develop their use of formal mathematical knowledge to interpret and solve problems, including in financial mathematics
- begin to model situations mathematically and express the results using a range of formal mathematical representations
- select appropriate concepts, methods and techniques to apply to unfamiliar and non-routine problems.

## Subject content

### Number

Pupils should be taught to:

- understand and use place value for decimals, measures and integers of any size
- order positive and negative integers, decimals and fractions; use the number line as a model for ordering of the real numbers; use the symbols =, ≠, <, >, ≤, ≥
- use the concepts and vocabulary of prime numbers, factors (or divisors), multiples, common factors, common multiples, highest common factor, lowest common multiple, prime factorisation, including using product notation and the unique factorisation property
- use the four operations, including formal written methods, applied to integers, decimals, proper and improper fractions, and mixed numbers, all both positive and negative
- use conventional notation for the priority of operations, including brackets, powers, roots and reciprocals
- recognise and use relationships between operations including inverse operations
- use integer powers and associated real roots (square, cube and higher), recognise powers of 2, 3, 4, 5 and distinguish between exact representations of roots and their decimal approximations
- interpret and compare numbers in standard form  $A \times 10^n$   $1 \leq A < 10$ , where  $n$  is a positive or negative integer or zero
- work interchangeably with terminating decimals and their corresponding fractions (such as 3.5 and  $\frac{7}{2}$  or 0.375 and  $\frac{3}{8}$ )
- define percentage as ‘number of parts per hundred’, interpret percentages and percentage changes as a fraction or a decimal, interpret these multiplicatively, express one quantity as a percentage of another, compare two quantities using percentages, and work with percentages greater than 100%
- interpret fractions and percentages as operators
- use standard units of mass, length, time, money and other measures, including with decimal quantities
- round numbers and measures to an appropriate degree of accuracy [for example, to a number of decimal places or significant figures]
- use approximation through rounding to estimate answers and calculate possible resulting errors expressed using inequality notation  $a < x \leq b$
- use a calculator and other technologies to calculate results accurately and then interpret them appropriately
- appreciate the infinite nature of the sets of integers, real and rational numbers.

## Algebra

Pupils should be taught to:

- use and interpret algebraic notation, including:
  - $ab$  in place of  $a \times b$
  - $3y$  in place of  $y + y + y$  and  $3 \times y$
  - $a^2$  in place of  $a \times a$ ,  $a^3$  in place of  $a \times a \times a$ ;  $a^2b$  in place of  $a \times a \times b$
  - $\frac{a}{b}$  in place of  $a \div b$
  - coefficients written as fractions rather than as decimals
  - brackets
- substitute numerical values into formulae and expressions, including scientific formulae
- understand and use the concepts and vocabulary of expressions, equations, inequalities, terms and factors
- simplify and manipulate algebraic expressions to maintain equivalence by:
  - collecting like terms
  - multiplying a single term over a bracket
  - taking out common factors
  - expanding products of two or more binomials
- understand and use standard mathematical formulae; rearrange formulae to change the subject
- model situations or procedures by translating them into algebraic expressions or formulae and by using graphs
- use algebraic methods to solve linear equations in one variable (including all forms that require rearrangement)
- work with coordinates in all four quadrants
- recognise, sketch and produce graphs of linear and quadratic functions of one variable with appropriate scaling, using equations in  $x$  and  $y$  and the Cartesian plane
- interpret mathematical relationships both algebraically and graphically
- reduce a given linear equation in two variables to the standard form  $y = mx + c$ ; calculate and interpret gradients and intercepts of graphs of such linear equations numerically, graphically and algebraically
- use linear and quadratic graphs to estimate values of  $y$  for given values of  $x$  and vice versa and to find approximate solutions of simultaneous linear equations
- find approximate solutions to contextual problems from given graphs of a variety of functions, including piece-wise linear, exponential and reciprocal graphs
- generate terms of a sequence from either a term-to-term or a position-to-term rule
- recognise arithmetic sequences and find the  $n$ th term
- recognise geometric sequences and appreciate other sequences that arise.

## Ratio, proportion and rates of change

Pupils should be taught to:

- change freely between related standard units [for example time, length, area, volume/capacity, mass]
- use scale factors, scale diagrams and maps
- express one quantity as a fraction of another, where the fraction is less than 1 and greater than 1
- use ratio notation, including reduction to simplest form
- divide a given quantity into two parts in a given part:part or part:whole ratio; express the division of a quantity into two parts as a ratio
- understand that a multiplicative relationship between two quantities can be expressed as a ratio or a fraction
- relate the language of ratios and the associated calculations to the arithmetic of fractions and to linear functions
- solve problems involving percentage change, including: percentage increase, decrease and original value problems and simple interest in financial mathematics
- solve problems involving direct and inverse proportion, including graphical and algebraic representations
- use compound units such as speed, unit pricing and density to solve problems.

## Geometry and measures

Pupils should be taught to:

- derive and apply formulae to calculate and solve problems involving: perimeter and area of triangles, parallelograms, trapezia, volume of cuboids (including cubes) and other prisms (including cylinders)
- calculate and solve problems involving: perimeters of 2-D shapes (including circles), areas of circles and composite shapes
- draw and measure line segments and angles in geometric figures, including interpreting scale drawings
- derive and use the standard ruler and compass constructions (perpendicular bisector of a line segment, constructing a perpendicular to a given line from/at a given point, bisecting a given angle); recognise and use the perpendicular distance from a point to a line as the shortest distance to the line
- describe, sketch and draw using conventional terms and notations: points, lines, parallel lines, perpendicular lines, right angles, regular polygons, and other polygons that are reflectively and rotationally symmetric

## Mathematics

- use the standard conventions for labelling the sides and angles of triangle ABC, and know and use the criteria for congruence of triangles
- derive and illustrate properties of triangles, quadrilaterals, circles, and other plane figures [for example, equal lengths and angles] using appropriate language and technologies
- identify properties of, and describe the results of, translations, rotations and reflections applied to given figures
- identify and construct congruent triangles, and construct similar shapes by enlargement, with and without coordinate grids
- apply the properties of angles at a point, angles at a point on a straight line, vertically opposite angles
- understand and use the relationship between parallel lines and alternate and corresponding angles
- derive and use the sum of angles in a triangle and use it to deduce the angle sum in any polygon, and to derive properties of regular polygons
- apply angle facts, triangle congruence, similarity and properties of quadrilaterals to derive results about angles and sides, including Pythagoras' Theorem, and use known results to obtain simple proofs
- use Pythagoras' Theorem and trigonometric ratios in similar triangles to solve problems involving right-angled triangles
- use the properties of faces, surfaces, edges and vertices of cubes, cuboids, prisms, cylinders, pyramids, cones and spheres to solve problems in 3-D
- interpret mathematical relationships both algebraically and geometrically.

## Probability

Pupils should be taught to:

- record, describe and analyse the frequency of outcomes of simple probability experiments involving randomness, fairness, equally and unequally likely outcomes, using appropriate language and the 0-1 probability scale
- understand that the probabilities of all possible outcomes sum to 1
- enumerate sets and unions/intersections of sets systematically, using tables, grids and Venn diagrams
- generate theoretical sample spaces for single and combined events with equally likely, mutually exclusive outcomes and use these to calculate theoretical probabilities.

## Statistics

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe, interpret and compare observed distributions of a single variable through: appropriate graphical representation involving discrete, continuous and grouped data; and appropriate measures of central tendency (mean, mode, median) and spread (range, consideration of outliers)
- construct and interpret appropriate tables, charts, and diagrams, including frequency tables, bar charts, pie charts, and pictograms for categorical data, and vertical line (or bar) charts for ungrouped and grouped numerical data
- describe simple mathematical relationships between two variables (bivariate data) in observational and experimental contexts and illustrate using scatter graphs.

## Key stage 4

### Introduction

Mathematics is an interconnected subject in which pupils need to be able to move fluently between representations of mathematical ideas. The programme of study for key stage 4 is organised into apparently distinct domains, but pupils should develop and consolidate connections across mathematical ideas. They should build on learning from key stage 3 to further develop fluency, mathematical reasoning and competence in solving increasingly sophisticated problems. They should also apply their mathematical knowledge wherever relevant in other subjects and in financial contexts.

The expectation is that the majority of pupils will move through the programme of study at broadly the same pace. However, decisions about when to progress should always be based on the security of pupils' understanding and their readiness to progress. Pupils who grasp concepts rapidly should be challenged through being offered rich and sophisticated problems before any acceleration through new content. Those who are not sufficiently fluent with earlier material should consolidate their understanding, including through additional practice, before moving on.

This programme of study specifies:

- the mathematical content that should be taught to all pupils, in standard type; and
- additional mathematical content to be taught to more highly attaining pupils, in **bold** type and braces { }.

Together, the mathematical content set out in the key stage 3 and key stage 4 programmes of study covers the full range of material contained in the GCSE Mathematics qualification. Wherever it is appropriate, given pupils' security of understanding and readiness to progress, pupils should be taught the full content set out in this programme of study.

### Working mathematically

Through the mathematics content, pupils should be taught to:

#### Develop fluency

- consolidate their numerical and mathematical capability from key stage 3 and extend their understanding of the number system to include powers, roots **{and fractional indices}**
- select and use appropriate calculation strategies to solve increasingly complex problems, including exact calculations involving multiples of  $\pi$  **{and surds}**, use of standard form and application and interpretation of limits of accuracy



## Mathematics

- consolidate their algebraic capability from key stage 3 and extend their understanding of algebraic simplification and manipulation to include quadratic expressions, **{and expressions involving surds and algebraic fractions}**
- extend fluency with expressions and equations from key stage 3, to include quadratic equations, simultaneous equations and inequalities
- move freely between different numerical, algebraic, graphical and diagrammatic representations, including of linear, quadratic, reciprocal, **{exponential and trigonometric}** functions
- use mathematical language and properties precisely.

## Reason mathematically

- extend and formalise their knowledge of ratio and proportion, including trigonometric ratios, in working with measures and geometry, and in working with proportional relations algebraically and graphically
- extend their ability to identify variables and express relations between variables algebraically and graphically
- make and test conjectures about the generalisations that underlie patterns and relationships; look for proofs or counter-examples; begin to use algebra to support and construct arguments **{and proofs}**
- reason deductively in geometry, number and algebra, including using geometrical constructions
- interpret when the structure of a numerical problem requires additive, multiplicative or proportional reasoning
- explore what can and cannot be inferred in statistical and probabilistic settings, and express their arguments formally
- assess the validity of an argument and the accuracy of a given way of presenting information.

## Solve problems

- develop their mathematical knowledge, in part through solving problems and evaluating the outcomes, including multi-step problems
- develop their use of formal mathematical knowledge to interpret and solve problems, including in financial contexts
- make and use connections between different parts of mathematics to solve problems

## Mathematics

- model situations mathematically and express the results using a range of formal mathematical representations, reflecting on how their solutions may have been affected by any modelling assumptions
- select appropriate concepts, methods and techniques to apply to unfamiliar and non-routine problems; interpret their solution in the context of the given problem.

## Subject content

### Number

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- apply systematic listing strategies, **{including use of the product rule for counting}**
- **{estimate powers and roots of any given positive number}**
- calculate with roots, and with integer **{and fractional}** indices
- calculate exactly with fractions, **{surds}** and multiples of  $\pi$ ; **{simplify surd expressions involving squares [for example  $\sqrt{12} = \sqrt{4 \times 3} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{3} = 2\sqrt{3}$ ] and rationalise denominators}**
- calculate with numbers in standard form  $A \times 10^n$ , where  $1 \leq A < 10$  and  $n$  is an integer
- **{change recurring decimals into their corresponding fractions and vice versa}**
- identify and work with fractions in ratio problems
- apply and interpret limits of accuracy when rounding or truncating, **{including upper and lower bounds}**.

### Algebra

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- simplify and manipulate algebraic expressions (including those involving surds **{and algebraic fractions}**) by:
  - factorising quadratic expressions of the form  $x^2 + bx + c$ , including the difference of two squares; **{factorising quadratic expressions of the form  $ax^2 + bx + c$ }**
  - simplifying expressions involving sums, products and powers, including the laws of indices
- know the difference between an equation and an identity; argue mathematically to show algebraic expressions are equivalent, and use algebra to support and construct arguments **{and proofs}**
- where appropriate, interpret simple expressions as functions with inputs and outputs; **{interpret the reverse process as the ‘inverse function’; interpret the succession of two functions as a ‘composite function’}**
- use the form  $y = mx + c$  to identify parallel **{and perpendicular}** lines; find the equation of the line through two given points, or through one point with a given gradient

## Mathematics

- identify and interpret roots, intercepts and turning points of quadratic functions graphically; deduce roots algebraically **{and turning points by completing the square}**
- recognise, sketch and interpret graphs of linear functions, quadratic functions, simple cubic functions, the reciprocal function  $y = \frac{1}{x}$  with  $x \neq 0$ , **{the exponential function  $y = k^x$  for positive values of  $k$ , and the trigonometric functions (with arguments in degrees)  $y = \sin x$ ,  $y = \cos x$  and  $y = \tan x$  for angles of any size}**
- **{sketch translations and reflections of the graph of a given function}**
- plot and interpret graphs (including reciprocal graphs **{and exponential graphs}**) and graphs of non-standard functions in real contexts, to find approximate solutions to problems such as simple kinematic problems involving distance, speed and acceleration
- **{calculate or estimate gradients of graphs and areas under graphs (including quadratic and other non-linear graphs), and interpret results in cases such as distance-time graphs, velocity-time graphs and graphs in financial contexts}**
- **{recognise and use the equation of a circle with centre at the origin; find the equation of a tangent to a circle at a given point}**
- solve quadratic equations **{including those that require rearrangement}** algebraically by factorising, **{by completing the square and by using the quadratic formula}**; find approximate solutions using a graph
- solve two simultaneous equations in two variables (linear/linear **{or linear/quadratic}**) algebraically; find approximate solutions using a graph
- **{find approximate solutions to equations numerically using iteration}**
- translate simple situations or procedures into algebraic expressions or formulae; derive an equation (or two simultaneous equations), solve the equation(s) and interpret the solution
- solve linear inequalities in one **{or two}** variable{s}, **{and quadratic inequalities in one variable}**; represent the solution set on a number line, **{using set notation and on a graph}**
- recognise and use sequences of triangular, square and cube numbers, simple arithmetic progressions, Fibonacci type sequences, quadratic sequences, and simple geometric progressions ( $r^n$  where  $n$  is an integer, and  $r$  is a positive rational number **{or a surd}**) **{and other sequences}**
- deduce expressions to calculate the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term of linear **{and quadratic}** sequences.

## Ratio, proportion and rates of change

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- compare lengths, areas and volumes using ratio notation and/or scale factors; make links to similarity (including trigonometric ratios)
- convert between related compound units (speed, rates of pay, prices, density, pressure) in numerical and algebraic contexts
- understand that  $X$  is inversely proportional to  $Y$  is equivalent to  $X$  is proportional to  $\frac{1}{Y}$ ; **{construct and}** interpret equations that describe direct and inverse proportion
- interpret the gradient of a straight line graph as a rate of change; recognise and interpret graphs that illustrate direct and inverse proportion
- **{interpret the gradient at a point on a curve as the instantaneous rate of change; apply the concepts of instantaneous and average rate of change (gradients of tangents and chords) in numerical, algebraic and graphical contexts}**
- set up, solve and interpret the answers in growth and decay problems, including compound interest **{and work with general iterative processes}**.

## Geometry and measures

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- interpret and use fractional **{and negative}** scale factors for enlargements
- **{describe the changes and invariance achieved by combinations of rotations, reflections and translations}**
- identify and apply circle definitions and properties, including: centre, radius, chord, diameter, circumference, tangent, arc, sector and segment
- **{apply and prove the standard circle theorems concerning angles, radii, tangents and chords, and use them to prove related results}**
- construct and interpret plans and elevations of 3D shapes
- interpret and use bearings
- calculate arc lengths, angles and areas of sectors of circles
- calculate surface areas and volumes of spheres, pyramids, cones and composite solids
- apply the concepts of congruence and similarity, including the relationships between lengths, **{areas and volumes}** in similar figures
- apply Pythagoras' Theorem and trigonometric ratios to find angles and lengths in right-angled triangles **{and, where possible, general triangles}** in two **{and three}** dimensional figures

## Mathematics

- know the exact values of  $\sin \theta$  and  $\cos \theta$  for  $\theta = 0^\circ, 30^\circ, 45^\circ, 60^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$ ; know the exact value of  $\tan \theta$  for  $\theta = 0^\circ, 30^\circ, 45^\circ$  and  $60^\circ$
- **{know and apply the sine rule,  $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$ , and cosine rule,  $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$ , to find unknown lengths and angles}**
- **{know and apply  $\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C$  to calculate the area, sides or angles of any triangle}**
- describe translations as 2D vectors
- apply addition and subtraction of vectors, multiplication of vectors by a scalar, and diagrammatic and column representations of vectors; **{use vectors to construct geometric arguments and proofs}**.

## Probability

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- apply the property that the probabilities of an exhaustive set of mutually exclusive events sum to one
- use a probability model to predict the outcomes of future experiments; understand that empirical unbiased samples tend towards theoretical probability distributions, with increasing sample size
- calculate the probability of independent and dependent combined events, including using tree diagrams and other representations, and know the underlying assumptions
- **{calculate and interpret conditional probabilities through representation using expected frequencies with two-way tables, tree diagrams and Venn diagrams}**.

## Statistics

In addition to consolidating subject content from key stage 3, pupils should be taught to:

- infer properties of populations or distributions from a sample, whilst knowing the limitations of sampling
- interpret and construct tables and line graphs for time series data
- **{construct and interpret diagrams for grouped discrete data and continuous data, i.e. histograms with equal and unequal class intervals and cumulative frequency graphs, and know their appropriate use}**
- interpret, analyse and compare the distributions of data sets from univariate empirical distributions through:
  - appropriate graphical representation involving discrete, continuous and grouped data, **{including box plots}**

## Mathematics

- appropriate measures of central tendency (including modal class) and spread **{including quartiles and inter-quartile range}**
- apply statistics to describe a population
- use and interpret scatter graphs of bivariate data; recognise correlation and know that it does not indicate causation; draw estimated lines of best fit; make predictions; interpolate and extrapolate apparent trends whilst knowing the dangers of so doing.

# Science

## Purpose of study

A high-quality science education provides the foundations for understanding the world through the specific disciplines of biology, chemistry and physics. Science has changed our lives and is vital to the world's future prosperity, and all pupils should be taught essential aspects of the knowledge, methods, processes and uses of science. Through building up a body of key foundational knowledge and concepts, pupils should be encouraged to recognise the power of rational explanation and develop a sense of excitement and curiosity about natural phenomena. They should be encouraged to understand how science can be used to explain what is occurring, predict how things will behave, and analyse causes.

## Aims

The national curriculum for science aims to ensure that all pupils:

- develop **scientific knowledge and conceptual understanding** through the specific disciplines of biology, chemistry and physics
- develop understanding of the **nature, processes and methods of science** through different types of science enquiries that help them to answer scientific questions about the world around them
- are equipped with the scientific knowledge required to understand the **uses and implications** of science, today and for the future.

## Scientific knowledge and conceptual understanding

The programmes of study describe a sequence of knowledge and concepts. While it is important that pupils make progress, it is also vitally important that they develop secure understanding of each key block of knowledge and concepts in order to progress to the next stage. Insecure, superficial understanding will not allow genuine progression: pupils may struggle at key points of transition (such as between primary and secondary school), build up serious misconceptions, and/or have significant difficulties in understanding higher-order content.

Pupils should be able to describe associated processes and key characteristics in common language, but they should also be familiar with, and use, technical terminology accurately and precisely. They should build up an extended specialist vocabulary. They should also apply their mathematical knowledge to their understanding of science, including collecting, presenting and analysing data. The social and economic implications of science are important but, generally, they are taught most appropriately within the wider



school curriculum: teachers will wish to use different contexts to maximise their pupils' engagement with and motivation to study science.

### The nature, processes and methods of science

'Working scientifically' specifies the understanding of the nature, processes and methods of science for each year group. It should not be taught as a separate strand. The notes and guidance give examples of how 'working scientifically' might be embedded within the content of biology, chemistry and physics, focusing on the key features of scientific enquiry, so that pupils learn to use a variety of approaches to answer relevant scientific questions. These types of scientific enquiry should include: observing over time; pattern seeking; identifying, classifying and grouping; comparative and fair testing (controlled investigations); and researching using secondary sources. Pupils should seek answers to questions through collecting, analysing and presenting data. 'Working scientifically' will be developed further at key stages 3 and 4, once pupils have built up sufficient understanding of science to engage meaningfully in more sophisticated discussion of experimental design and control.

### Spoken language

The national curriculum for science reflects the importance of spoken language in pupils' development across the whole curriculum – cognitively, socially and linguistically. The quality and variety of language that pupils hear and speak are key factors in developing their scientific vocabulary and articulating scientific concepts clearly and precisely. They must be assisted in making their thinking clear, both to themselves and others, and teachers should ensure that pupils build secure foundations by using discussion to probe and remedy their misconceptions.

### School curriculum

The programmes of study for science are set out year-by-year for key stages 1 and 2. Schools are, however, only required to teach the relevant programme of study by the end of the key stage. Within each key stage, schools therefore have the flexibility to introduce content earlier or later than set out in the programme of study. In addition, schools can introduce key stage content during an earlier key stage if appropriate. All schools are also required to set out their school curriculum for science on a year-by-year basis and make this information available online.

### Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the content indicated as being 'non-statutory'.**

## Key stage 1

The principal focus of science teaching in key stage 1 is to enable pupils to experience and observe phenomena, looking more closely at the natural and humanly-constructed world around them. They should be encouraged to be curious and ask questions about what they notice. They should be helped to develop their understanding of scientific ideas by using different types of scientific enquiry to answer their own questions, including observing changes over a period of time, noticing patterns, grouping and classifying things, carrying out simple comparative tests, and finding things out using secondary sources of information. They should begin to use simple scientific language to talk about what they have found out and communicate their ideas to a range of audiences in a variety of ways. Most of the learning about science should be done through the use of first-hand practical experiences, but there should also be some use of appropriate secondary sources, such as books, photographs and videos.

‘Working scientifically’ is described separately in the programme of study, but must **always** be taught through and clearly related to the teaching of substantive science content in the programme of study. Throughout the notes and guidance, examples show how scientific methods and skills might be linked to specific elements of the content.

Pupils should read and spell scientific vocabulary at a level consistent with their increasing word reading and spelling knowledge at key stage 1.

## Key stage 1 programme of study – years 1 and 2

### Working scientifically

#### Statutory requirements

During years 1 and 2, pupils should be taught to use the following practical scientific methods, processes and skills through the teaching of the programme of study content:

- asking simple questions and recognising that they can be answered in different ways
- observing closely, using simple equipment
- performing simple tests
- identifying and classifying
- using their observations and ideas to suggest answers to questions
- gathering and recording data to help in answering questions.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils in years 1 and 2 should explore the world around them and raise their own questions. They should experience different types of scientific enquiries, including practical activities, and begin to recognise ways in which they might answer scientific questions. They should use simple features to compare objects, materials and living things and, with help, decide how to sort and group them, observe changes over time, and, with guidance, they should begin to notice patterns and relationships. They should ask people questions and use simple secondary sources to find answers. They should use simple measurements and equipment (for example, hand lenses, egg timers) to gather data, carry out simple tests, record simple data, and talk about what they have found out and how they found it out. With help, they should record and communicate their findings in a range of ways and begin to use simple scientific language.

These opportunities for working scientifically should be provided across years 1 and 2 so that the expectations in the programme of study can be met by the end of year 2. Pupils are not expected to cover each aspect for every area of study.

## Year 1 programme of study

### Plants

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and name a variety of common wild and garden plants, including deciduous and evergreen trees
- identify and describe the basic structure of a variety of common flowering plants, including trees.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should use the local environment throughout the year to explore and answer questions about plants growing in their habitat. Where possible, they should observe the growth of flowers and vegetables that they have planted.

They should become familiar with common names of flowers, examples of deciduous and evergreen trees, and plant structures (including leaves, flowers (blossom), petals, fruit, roots, bulb, seed, trunk, branches, stem).

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing closely, perhaps using magnifying glasses, and comparing and contrasting familiar plants; describing how they were able to identify and group them, and drawing diagrams showing the parts of different plants including trees. Pupils might keep records of how plants have changed over time, for example the leaves falling off trees and buds opening; and compare and contrast what they have found out about different plants.

### Animals, including humans

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and name a variety of common animals including fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals
- identify and name a variety of common animals that are carnivores, herbivores and omnivores

### Statutory requirements

- describe and compare the structure of a variety of common animals (fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals, including pets)
- identify, name, draw and label the basic parts of the human body and say which part of the body is associated with each sense.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should use the local environment throughout the year to explore and answer questions about animals in their habitat. They should understand how to take care of animals taken from their local environment and the need to return them safely after study. Pupils should become familiar with the common names of some fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals, including those that are kept as pets.

Pupils should have plenty of opportunities to learn the names of the main body parts (including head, neck, arms, elbows, legs, knees, face, ears, eyes, hair, mouth, teeth) through games, actions, songs and rhymes.

Pupils might work scientifically by: using their observations to compare and contrast animals at first hand or through videos and photographs, describing how they identify and group them; grouping animals according to what they eat; and using their senses to compare different textures, sounds and smells.

## Everyday materials

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- distinguish between an object and the material from which it is made
- identify and name a variety of everyday materials, including wood, plastic, glass, metal, water, and rock
- describe the simple physical properties of a variety of everyday materials
- compare and group together a variety of everyday materials on the basis of their simple physical properties.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should explore, name, discuss and raise and answer questions about everyday materials so that they become familiar with the names of materials and properties such as: hard/soft; stretchy/stiff; shiny/dull; rough/smooth; bendy/not bendy; waterproof/not waterproof; absorbent/not absorbent; opaque/transparent. Pupils should explore and experiment with a wide variety of materials, not only those listed in the programme of study, but including for example: brick, paper, fabrics, elastic, foil.

Pupils might work scientifically by: performing simple tests to explore questions, for example: 'What is the best material for an umbrella? ...for lining a dog basket? ...for curtains? ...for a bookshelf? ...for a gymnast's leotard?'

## Seasonal changes

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- observe changes across the four seasons
- observe and describe weather associated with the seasons and how day length varies.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should observe and talk about changes in the weather and the seasons.

**Note:** Pupils should be warned that it is not safe to look directly at the Sun, even when wearing dark glasses.

Pupils might work scientifically by: making tables and charts about the weather; and making displays of what happens in the world around them, including day length, as the seasons change.

## Year 2 programme of study

### Living things and their habitats

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- explore and compare the differences between things that are living, dead, and things that have never been alive
- identify that most living things live in habitats to which they are suited and describe how different habitats provide for the basic needs of different kinds of animals and plants, and how they depend on each other
- identify and name a variety of plants and animals in their habitats, including micro-habitats
- describe how animals obtain their food from plants and other animals, using the idea of a simple food chain, and identify and name different sources of food.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be introduced to the idea that all living things have certain characteristics that are essential for keeping them alive and healthy. They should raise and answer questions that help them to become familiar with the life processes that are common to all living things. Pupils should be introduced to the terms 'habitat' (a natural environment or home of a variety of plants and animals) and 'micro-habitat' (a very small habitat, for example for woodlice under stones, logs or leaf litter). They should raise and answer questions about the local environment that help them to identify and study a variety of plants and animals within their habitat and observe how living things depend on each other, for example, plants serving as a source of food and shelter for animals. Pupils should compare animals in familiar habitats with animals found in less familiar habitats, for example, on the seashore, in woodland, in the ocean, in the rainforest.

Pupils might work scientifically by: sorting and classifying things according to whether they are living, dead or were never alive, and recording their findings using charts. They should describe how they decided where to place things, exploring questions for example: 'Is a flame alive? Is a deciduous tree dead in winter?' and talk about ways of answering their questions. They could construct a simple food chain that includes humans (e.g. grass, cow, human). They could describe the conditions in different habitats and micro-habitats (under log, on stony path, under bushes) and find out how the conditions affect the number and type(s) of plants and animals that live there.

## Plants

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- observe and describe how seeds and bulbs grow into mature plants
- find out and describe how plants need water, light and a suitable temperature to grow and stay healthy.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should use the local environment throughout the year to observe how different plants grow. Pupils should be introduced to the requirements of plants for germination, growth and survival, as well as to the processes of reproduction and growth in plants.

**Note:** Seeds and bulbs need water to grow but most do not need light; seeds and bulbs have a store of food inside them.

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing and recording, with some accuracy, the growth of a variety of plants as they change over time from a seed or bulb, or observing similar plants at different stages of growth; setting up a comparative test to show that plants need light and water to stay healthy.

## Animals, including humans

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- notice that animals, including humans, have offspring which grow into adults
- find out about and describe the basic needs of animals, including humans, for survival (water, food and air)
- describe the importance for humans of exercise, eating the right amounts of different types of food, and hygiene.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be introduced to the basic needs of animals for survival, as well as the importance of exercise and nutrition for humans. They should also be introduced to the processes of reproduction and growth in animals. The focus at this stage should be on questions that help pupils to recognise growth; they should not be expected to understand how reproduction occurs.



**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

The following examples might be used: egg, chick, chicken; egg, caterpillar, pupa, butterfly; spawn, tadpole, frog; lamb, sheep. Growing into adults can include reference to baby, toddler, child, teenager, adult.

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing, through video or first-hand observation and measurement, how different animals, including humans, grow; asking questions about what things animals need for survival and what humans need to stay healthy; and suggesting ways to find answers to their questions.

**Uses of everyday materials****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and compare the suitability of a variety of everyday materials, including wood, metal, plastic, glass, brick, rock, paper and cardboard for particular uses
- find out how the shapes of solid objects made from some materials can be changed by squashing, bending, twisting and stretching.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should identify and discuss the uses of different everyday materials so that they become familiar with how some materials are used for more than one thing (metal can be used for coins, cans, cars and table legs; wood can be used for matches, floors, and telegraph poles) or different materials are used for the same thing (spoons can be made from plastic, wood, metal, but not normally from glass). They should think about the properties of materials that make them suitable or unsuitable for particular purposes and they should be encouraged to think about unusual and creative uses for everyday materials. Pupils might find out about people who have developed useful new materials, for example John Dunlop, Charles Macintosh or John McAdam.

Pupils might work scientifically by: comparing the uses of everyday materials in and around the school with materials found in other places (at home, the journey to school, on visits, and in stories, rhymes and songs); observing closely, identifying and classifying the uses of different materials, and recording their observations.

## Lower key stage 2 – years 3 and 4

The principal focus of science teaching in lower key stage 2 is to enable pupils to broaden their scientific view of the world around them. They should do this through exploring, talking about, testing and developing ideas about everyday phenomena and the relationships between living things and familiar environments, and by beginning to develop their ideas about functions, relationships and interactions. They should ask their own questions about what they observe and make some decisions about which types of scientific enquiry are likely to be the best ways of answering them, including observing changes over time, noticing patterns, grouping and classifying things, carrying out simple comparative and fair tests and finding things out using secondary sources of information. They should draw simple conclusions and use some scientific language, first, to talk about and, later, to write about what they have found out.

‘Working scientifically’ is described separately at the beginning of the programme of study, but must **always** be taught through and clearly related to substantive science content in the programme of study. Throughout the notes and guidance, examples show how scientific methods and skills might be linked to specific elements of the content.

Pupils should read and spell scientific vocabulary correctly and with confidence, using their growing word reading and spelling knowledge.

## Lower key stage 2 programme of study

### Working scientifically

#### Statutory requirements

During years 3 and 4, pupils should be taught to use the following practical scientific methods, processes and skills through the teaching of the programme of study content:

- asking relevant questions and using different types of scientific enquiries to answer them
- setting up simple practical enquiries, comparative and fair tests
- making systematic and careful observations and, where appropriate, taking accurate measurements using standard units, using a range of equipment, including thermometers and data loggers
- gathering, recording, classifying and presenting data in a variety of ways to help in answering questions
- recording findings using simple scientific language, drawings, labelled diagrams, keys, bar charts, and tables
- reporting on findings from enquiries, including oral and written explanations, displays or presentations of results and conclusions
- using results to draw simple conclusions, make predictions for new values, suggest improvements and raise further questions
- identifying differences, similarities or changes related to simple scientific ideas and processes
- using straightforward scientific evidence to answer questions or to support their findings.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils in years 3 and 4 should be given a range of scientific experiences to enable them to raise their own questions about the world around them. They should start to make their own decisions about the most appropriate type of scientific enquiry they might use to answer questions; recognise when a simple fair test is necessary and help to decide how to set it up; talk about criteria for grouping, sorting and classifying; and use simple keys. They should begin to look for naturally occurring patterns and relationships and decide what data to collect to identify them. They should help to make decisions about what observations to make, how long to make them for and the type of simple equipment that might be used.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

They should learn how to use new equipment, such as data loggers, appropriately. They should collect data from their own observations and measurements, using notes, simple tables and standard units, and help to make decisions about how to record and analyse this data. With help, pupils should look for changes, patterns, similarities and differences in their data in order to draw simple conclusions and answer questions. With support, they should identify new questions arising from the data, making predictions for new values within or beyond the data they have collected and finding ways of improving what they have already done. They should also recognise when and how secondary sources might help them to answer questions that cannot be answered through practical investigations. Pupils should use relevant scientific language to discuss their ideas and communicate their findings in ways that are appropriate for different audiences.

These opportunities for working scientifically should be provided across years 3 and 4 so that the expectations in the programme of study can be met by the end of year 4. Pupils are not expected to cover each aspect for every area of study.

## Year 3 programme of study

### Plants

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and describe the functions of different parts of flowering plants: roots, stem/trunk, leaves and flowers
- explore the requirements of plants for life and growth (air, light, water, nutrients from soil, and room to grow) and how they vary from plant to plant
- investigate the way in which water is transported within plants
- explore the part that flowers play in the life cycle of flowering plants, including pollination, seed formation and seed dispersal.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should be introduced to the relationship between structure and function: the idea that every part has a job to do. They should explore questions that focus on the role of the roots and stem in nutrition and support, leaves for nutrition and flowers for reproduction.

**Note:** Pupils can be introduced to the idea that plants can make their own food, but at this stage they do not need to understand how this happens.

Pupils might work scientifically by: comparing the effect of different factors on plant growth, for example, the amount of light, the amount of fertiliser; discovering how seeds are formed by observing the different stages of plant life cycles over a period of time; looking for patterns in the structure of fruits that relate to how the seeds are dispersed. They might observe how water is transported in plants, for example, by putting cut, white carnations into coloured water and observing how water travels up the stem to the flowers.

## Animals, including humans

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify that animals, including humans, need the right types and amount of nutrition, and that they cannot make their own food; they get nutrition from what they eat
- identify that humans and some other animals have skeletons and muscles for support, protection and movement.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should continue to learn about the importance of nutrition and should be introduced to the main body parts associated with the skeleton and muscles, finding out how different parts of the body have special functions.

Pupils might work scientifically by: identifying and grouping animals with and without skeletons and observing and comparing their movement; exploring ideas about what would happen if humans did not have skeletons. They might compare and contrast the diets of different animals (including their pets) and decide ways of grouping them according to what they eat. They might research different food groups and how they keep us healthy and design meals based on what they find out.

## Rocks

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare and group together different kinds of rocks on the basis of their appearance and simple physical properties
- describe in simple terms how fossils are formed when things that have lived are trapped within rock
- recognise that soils are made from rocks and organic matter.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Linked with work in geography, pupils should explore different kinds of rocks and soils, including those in the local environment.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing rocks, including those used in buildings and gravestones, and exploring how and why they might have changed over time; using a hand lens or microscope to help them to identify and classify rocks according to whether they have grains or crystals, and whether they have fossils in them. Pupils might research and discuss the different kinds of living things whose fossils are found in sedimentary rock and explore how fossils are formed. Pupils could explore different soils and identify similarities and differences between them and investigate what happens when rocks are rubbed together or what changes occur when they are in water. They can raise and answer questions about the way soils are formed.

**Light****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise that they need light in order to see things and that dark is the absence of light
- notice that light is reflected from surfaces
- recognise that light from the sun can be dangerous and that there are ways to protect their eyes
- recognise that shadows are formed when the light from a light source is blocked by an opaque object
- find patterns in the way that the size of shadows change.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should explore what happens when light reflects off a mirror or other reflective surfaces, including playing mirror games to help them to answer questions about how light behaves. They should think about why it is important to protect their eyes from bright lights. They should look for, and measure, shadows, and find out how they are formed and what might cause the shadows to change.

**Note:** Pupils should be warned that it is not safe to look directly at the Sun, even when wearing dark glasses.

Pupils might work scientifically by: looking for patterns in what happens to shadows when the light source moves or the distance between the light source and the object changes.

## Forces and magnets

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare how things move on different surfaces
- notice that some forces need contact between two objects, but magnetic forces can act at a distance
- observe how magnets attract or repel each other and attract some materials and not others
- compare and group together a variety of everyday materials on the basis of whether they are attracted to a magnet, and identify some magnetic materials
- describe magnets as having two poles
- predict whether two magnets will attract or repel each other, depending on which poles are facing.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should observe that magnetic forces can act without direct contact, unlike most forces, where direct contact is necessary (for example, opening a door, pushing a swing). They should explore the behaviour and everyday uses of different magnets (for example, bar, ring, button and horseshoe).

Pupils might work scientifically by: comparing how different things move and grouping them; raising questions and carrying out tests to find out how far things move on different surfaces and gathering and recording data to find answers their questions; exploring the strengths of different magnets and finding a fair way to compare them; sorting materials into those that are magnetic and those that are not; looking for patterns in the way that magnets behave in relation to each other and what might affect this, for example, the strength of the magnet or which pole faces another; identifying how these properties make magnets useful in everyday items and suggesting creative uses for different magnets.



## Year 4 programme of study

### Living things and their habitats

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise that living things can be grouped in a variety of ways
- explore and use classification keys to help group, identify and name a variety of living things in their local and wider environment
- recognise that environments can change and that this can sometimes pose dangers to living things.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should use the local environment throughout the year to raise and answer questions that help them to identify and study plants and animals in their habitat. They should identify how the habitat changes throughout the year. Pupils should explore possible ways of grouping a wide selection of living things that include animals and flowering plants and non-flowering plants. Pupils could begin to put vertebrate animals into groups such as fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds, and mammals; and invertebrates into snails and slugs, worms, spiders, and insects.

**Note:** Plants can be grouped into categories such as flowering plants (including grasses) and non-flowering plants, such as ferns and mosses.

Pupils should explore examples of human impact (both positive and negative) on environments, for example, the positive effects of nature reserves, ecologically planned parks, or garden ponds, and the negative effects of population and development, litter or deforestation.

Pupils might work scientifically by: using and making simple guides or keys to explore and identify local plants and animals; making a guide to local living things; raising and answering questions based on their observations of animals and what they have found out about other animals that they have researched.

**Animals, including humans****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe the simple functions of the basic parts of the digestive system in humans
- identify the different types of teeth in humans and their simple functions
- construct and interpret a variety of food chains, identifying producers, predators and prey.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should be introduced to the main body parts associated with the digestive system, for example, mouth, tongue, teeth, oesophagus, stomach and small and large intestine and explore questions that help them to understand their special functions.

Pupils might work scientifically by: comparing the teeth of carnivores and herbivores, and suggesting reasons for differences; finding out what damages teeth and how to look after them. They might draw and discuss their ideas about the digestive system and compare them with models or images.

**States of matter****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare and group materials together, according to whether they are solids, liquids or gases
- observe that some materials change state when they are heated or cooled, and measure or research the temperature at which this happens in degrees Celsius (°C)
- identify the part played by evaporation and condensation in the water cycle and associate the rate of evaporation with temperature.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should explore a variety of everyday materials and develop simple descriptions of the states of matter (solids hold their shape; liquids form a pool not a pile; gases escape from an unsealed container). Pupils should observe water as a solid, a liquid and a gas and should note the changes to water when it is heated or cooled.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

**Note:** Teachers should avoid using materials where heating is associated with chemical change, for example, through baking or burning.

Pupils might work scientifically by: grouping and classifying a variety of different materials; exploring the effect of temperature on substances such as chocolate, butter, cream (for example, to make food such as chocolate crispy cakes and ice-cream for a party). They could research the temperature at which materials change state, for example, when iron melts or when oxygen condenses into a liquid. They might observe and record evaporation over a period of time, for example, a puddle in the playground or washing on a line, and investigate the effect of temperature on washing drying or snowmen melting.

**Sound****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify how sounds are made, associating some of them with something vibrating
- recognise that vibrations from sounds travel through a medium to the ear
- find patterns between the pitch of a sound and features of the object that produced it
- find patterns between the volume of a sound and the strength of the vibrations that produced it
- recognise that sounds get fainter as the distance from the sound source increases.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should explore and identify the way sound is made through vibration in a range of different musical instruments from around the world; and find out how the pitch and volume of sounds can be changed in a variety of ways.

Pupils might work scientifically by: finding patterns in the sounds that are made by different objects such as saucepan lids of different sizes or elastic bands of different thicknesses. They might make earmuffs from a variety of different materials to investigate which provides the best insulation against sound. They could make and play their own instruments by using what they have found out about pitch and volume.

## Electricity

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify common appliances that run on electricity
- construct a simple series electrical circuit, identifying and naming its basic parts, including cells, wires, bulbs, switches and buzzers
- identify whether or not a lamp will light in a simple series circuit, based on whether or not the lamp is part of a complete loop with a battery
- recognise that a switch opens and closes a circuit and associate this with whether or not a lamp lights in a simple series circuit
- recognise some common conductors and insulators, and associate metals with being good conductors.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should construct simple series circuits, trying different components, for example, bulbs, buzzers and motors, and including switches, and use their circuits to create simple devices. Pupils should draw the circuit as a pictorial representation, not necessarily using conventional circuit symbols at this stage; these will be introduced in year 6.

**Note:** Pupils might use the terms current and voltage, but these should not be introduced or defined formally at this stage. Pupils should be taught about precautions for working safely with electricity.

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing patterns, for example, that bulbs get brighter if more cells are added, that metals tend to be conductors of electricity, and that some materials can and some cannot be used to connect across a gap in a circuit.

## Upper key stage 2 – years 5 and 6

The principal focus of science teaching in upper key stage 2 is to enable pupils to develop a deeper understanding of a wide range of scientific ideas. They should do this through exploring and talking about their ideas; asking their own questions about scientific phenomena; and analysing functions, relationships and interactions more systematically. At upper key stage 2, they should encounter more abstract ideas and begin to recognise how these ideas help them to understand and predict how the world operates. They should also begin to recognise that scientific ideas change and develop over time. They should select the most appropriate ways to answer science questions using different types of scientific enquiry, including observing changes over different periods of time, noticing patterns, grouping and classifying things, carrying out comparative and fair tests and finding things out using a wide range of secondary sources of information. Pupils should draw conclusions based on their data and observations, use evidence to justify their ideas, and use their scientific knowledge and understanding to explain their findings.

‘Working and thinking scientifically’ is described separately at the beginning of the programme of study, but must **always** be taught through and clearly related to substantive science content in the programme of study. Throughout the notes and guidance, examples show how scientific methods and skills might be linked to specific elements of the content.

Pupils should read, spell and pronounce scientific vocabulary correctly.

## Upper key stage 2 programme of study

### Working scientifically

#### Statutory requirements

During years 5 and 6, pupils should be taught to use the following practical scientific methods, processes and skills through the teaching of the programme of study content:

- planning different types of scientific enquiries to answer questions, including recognising and controlling variables where necessary
- taking measurements, using a range of scientific equipment, with increasing accuracy and precision, taking repeat readings when appropriate
- recording data and results of increasing complexity using scientific diagrams and labels, classification keys, tables, scatter graphs, bar and line graphs
- using test results to make predictions to set up further comparative and fair tests
- reporting and presenting findings from enquiries, including conclusions, causal relationships and explanations of and degree of trust in results, in oral and written forms such as displays and other presentations
- identifying scientific evidence that has been used to support or refute ideas or arguments.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils in years 5 and 6 should use their science experiences to: explore ideas and raise different kinds of questions; select and plan the most appropriate type of scientific enquiry to use to answer scientific questions; recognise when and how to set up comparative and fair tests and explain which variables need to be controlled and why. They should use and develop keys and other information records to identify, classify and describe living things and materials, and identify patterns that might be found in the natural environment. They should make their own decisions about what observations to make, what measurements to use and how long to make them for, and whether to repeat them; choose the most appropriate equipment to make measurements and explain how to use it accurately. They should decide how to record data from a choice of familiar approaches; look for different causal relationships in their data and identify evidence that refutes or supports their ideas. They should use their results to identify when further tests and observations might be needed; recognise which secondary sources will be most useful to research their ideas and begin to separate opinion from fact. They should use relevant scientific language and illustrations to discuss, communicate and justify their scientific ideas and should talk about how scientific ideas have developed over time.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

These opportunities for working scientifically should be provided across years 5 and 6 so that the expectations in the programme of study can be met by the end of year 6. Pupils are not expected to cover each aspect for every area of study.

## Year 5 programme of study

### Living things and their habitats

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe the differences in the life cycles of a mammal, an amphibian, an insect and a bird
- describe the life process of reproduction in some plants and animals.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should study and raise questions about their local environment throughout the year. They should observe life-cycle changes in a variety of living things, for example, plants in the vegetable garden or flower border, and animals in the local environment. They should find out about the work of naturalists and animal behaviourists, for example, David Attenborough and Jane Goodall.

Pupils should find out about different types of reproduction, including sexual and asexual reproduction in plants, and sexual reproduction in animals.

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing and comparing the life cycles of plants and animals in their local environment with other plants and animals around the world (in the rainforest, in the oceans, in desert areas and in prehistoric times), asking pertinent questions and suggesting reasons for similarities and differences. They might try to grow new plants from different parts of the parent plant, for example, seeds, stem and root cuttings, tubers, bulbs. They might observe changes in an animal over a period of time (for example, by hatching and rearing chicks), comparing how different animals reproduce and grow.

### Animals, including humans

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe the changes as humans develop to old age.



**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should draw a timeline to indicate stages in the growth and development of humans. They should learn about the changes experienced in puberty.

Pupils could work scientifically by researching the gestation periods of other animals and comparing them with humans; by finding out and recording the length and mass of a baby as it grows.

**Properties and changes of materials****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- compare and group together everyday materials on the basis of their properties, including their hardness, solubility, transparency, conductivity (electrical and thermal), and response to magnets
- know that some materials will dissolve in liquid to form a solution, and describe how to recover a substance from a solution
- use knowledge of solids, liquids and gases to decide how mixtures might be separated, including through filtering, sieving and evaporating
- give reasons, based on evidence from comparative and fair tests, for the particular uses of everyday materials, including metals, wood and plastic
- demonstrate that dissolving, mixing and changes of state are reversible changes
- explain that some changes result in the formation of new materials, and that this kind of change is not usually reversible, including changes associated with burning and the action of acid on bicarbonate of soda.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should build a more systematic understanding of materials by exploring and comparing the properties of a broad range of materials, including relating these to what they learnt about magnetism in year 3 and about electricity in year 4. They should explore reversible changes, including, evaporating, filtering, sieving, melting and dissolving, recognising that melting and dissolving are different processes. Pupils should explore changes that are difficult to reverse, for example, burning, rusting and other reactions, for example, vinegar with bicarbonate of soda. They should find out about how chemists create new materials, for example, Spencer Silver, who invented the glue for sticky notes or Ruth Benerito, who invented wrinkle-free cotton.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

**Note:** Pupils are not required to make quantitative measurements about conductivity and insulation at this stage. It is sufficient for them to observe that some conductors will produce a brighter bulb in a circuit than others and that some materials will feel hotter than others when a heat source is placed against them. Safety guidelines should be followed when burning materials.

Pupils might work scientifically by: carrying out tests to answer questions, for example, 'Which materials would be the most effective for making a warm jacket, for wrapping ice cream to stop it melting, or for making blackout curtains?' They might compare materials in order to make a switch in a circuit. They could observe and compare the changes that take place, for example, when burning different materials or baking bread or cakes. They might research and discuss how chemical changes have an impact on our lives, for example, cooking, and discuss the creative use of new materials such as polymers, super-sticky and super-thin materials.

**Earth and space****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe the movement of the Earth, and other planets, relative to the Sun in the solar system
- describe the movement of the Moon relative to the Earth
- describe the Sun, Earth and Moon as approximately spherical bodies
- use the idea of the Earth's rotation to explain day and night and the apparent movement of the sun across the sky.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should be introduced to a model of the Sun and Earth that enables them to explain day and night. Pupils should learn that the Sun is a star at the centre of our solar system and that it has eight planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune (Pluto was reclassified as a 'dwarf planet' in 2006). They should understand that a moon is a celestial body that orbits a planet (Earth has one moon; Jupiter has four large moons and numerous smaller ones).

**Note:** Pupils should be warned that it is not safe to look directly at the Sun, even when wearing dark glasses.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should find out about the way that ideas about the solar system have developed, understanding how the geocentric model of the solar system gave way to the heliocentric model by considering the work of scientists such as Ptolemy, Alhazen and Copernicus.

Pupils might work scientifically by: comparing the time of day at different places on the Earth through internet links and direct communication; creating simple models of the solar system; constructing simple shadow clocks and sundials, calibrated to show midday and the start and end of the school day; finding out why some people think that structures such as Stonehenge might have been used as astronomical clocks.

**Forces****Statutory requirements**

Pupils should be taught to:

- explain that unsupported objects fall towards the Earth because of the force of gravity acting between the Earth and the falling object
- identify the effects of air resistance, water resistance and friction, that act between moving surfaces
- recognise that some mechanisms, including levers, pulleys and gears, allow a smaller force to have a greater effect.

**Notes and guidance (non-statutory)**

Pupils should explore falling objects and raise questions about the effects of air resistance. They should explore the effects of air resistance by observing how different objects such as parachutes and sycamore seeds fall. They should experience forces that make things begin to move, get faster or slow down. Pupils should explore the effects of friction on movement and find out how it slows or stops moving objects, for example, by observing the effects of a brake on a bicycle wheel. Pupils should explore the effects of levers, pulleys and simple machines on movement. Pupils might find out how scientists, for example, Galileo Galilei and Isaac Newton helped to develop the theory of gravitation.

Pupils might work scientifically by: exploring falling paper cones or cup-cake cases, and designing and making a variety of parachutes and carrying out fair tests to determine which designs are the most effective. They might explore resistance in water by making and testing boats of different shapes. They might design and make products that use levers, pulleys, gears and/or springs and explore their effects.

## Year 6 programme of study

### Living things and their habitats

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- describe how living things are classified into broad groups according to common observable characteristics and based on similarities and differences, including micro-organisms, plants and animals
- give reasons for classifying plants and animals based on specific characteristics.

#### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should build on their learning about grouping living things in year 4 by looking at the classification system in more detail. They should be introduced to the idea that broad groupings, such as micro-organisms, plants and animals can be subdivided. Through direct observations where possible, they should classify animals into commonly found invertebrates (such as insects, spiders, snails, worms) and vertebrates (fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals). They should discuss reasons why living things are placed in one group and not another.

Pupils might find out about the significance of the work of scientists such as Carl Linnaeus, a pioneer of classification.

Pupils might work scientifically by: using classification systems and keys to identify some animals and plants in the immediate environment. They could research unfamiliar animals and plants from a broad range of other habitats and decide where they belong in the classification system.

### Animals including humans

#### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- identify and name the main parts of the human circulatory system, and describe the functions of the heart, blood vessels and blood
- recognise the impact of diet, exercise, drugs and lifestyle on the way their bodies function
- describe the ways in which nutrients and water are transported within animals, including humans.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should build on their learning from years 3 and 4 about the main body parts and internal organs (skeletal, muscular and digestive system) to explore and answer questions that help them to understand how the circulatory system enables the body to function.

Pupils should learn how to keep their bodies healthy and how their bodies might be damaged – including how some drugs and other substances can be harmful to the human body.

Pupils might work scientifically by: exploring the work of scientists and scientific research about the relationship between diet, exercise, drugs, lifestyle and health.

## Evolution and inheritance

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise that living things have changed over time and that fossils provide information about living things that inhabited the Earth millions of years ago
- recognise that living things produce offspring of the same kind, but normally offspring vary and are not identical to their parents
- identify how animals and plants are adapted to suit their environment in different ways and that adaptation may lead to evolution.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Building on what they learned about fossils in the topic on rocks in year 3, pupils should find out more about how living things on earth have changed over time. They should be introduced to the idea that characteristics are passed from parents to their offspring, for instance by considering different breeds of dogs, and what happens when, for example, labradors are crossed with poodles. They should also appreciate that variation in offspring over time can make animals more or less able to survive in particular environments, for example, by exploring how giraffes' necks got longer, or the development of insulating fur on the arctic fox. Pupils might find out about the work of palaeontologists such as Mary Anning and about how Charles Darwin and Alfred Wallace developed their ideas on evolution.

**Note:** At this stage, pupils are not expected to understand how genes and chromosomes work.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils might work scientifically by: observing and raising questions about local animals and how they are adapted to their environment; comparing how some living things are adapted to survive in extreme conditions, for example, cactuses, penguins and camels. They might analyse the advantages and disadvantages of specific adaptations, such as being on two feet rather than four, having a long or a short beak, having gills or lungs, tendrils on climbing plants, brightly coloured and scented flowers.

## Light

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- recognise that light appears to travel in straight lines
- use the idea that light travels in straight lines to explain that objects are seen because they give out or reflect light into the eye
- explain that we see things because light travels from light sources to our eyes or from light sources to objects and then to our eyes
- use the idea that light travels in straight lines to explain why shadows have the same shape as the objects that cast them.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Pupils should build on the work on light in year 3, exploring the way that light behaves, including light sources, reflection and shadows. They should talk about what happens and make predictions.

Pupils might work scientifically by: deciding where to place rear-view mirrors on cars; designing and making a periscope and using the idea that light appears to travel in straight lines to explain how it works. They might investigate the relationship between light sources, objects and shadows by using shadow puppets. They could extend their experience of light by looking a range of phenomena including rainbows, colours on soap bubbles, objects looking bent in water and coloured filters (they do not need to explain why these phenomena occur).

## Electricity

### Statutory requirements

Pupils should be taught to:

- associate the brightness of a lamp or the volume of a buzzer with the number and voltage of cells used in the circuit
- compare and give reasons for variations in how components function, including the brightness of bulbs, the loudness of buzzers and the on/off position of switches
- use recognised symbols when representing a simple circuit in a diagram.

### Notes and guidance (non-statutory)

Building on their work in year 4, pupils should construct simple series circuits, to help them to answer questions about what happens when they try different components, for example, switches, bulbs, buzzers and motors. They should learn how to represent a simple circuit in a diagram using recognised symbols.

**Note:** Pupils are expected to learn only about series circuits, not parallel circuits. Pupils should be taught to take the necessary precautions for working safely with electricity.

Pupils might work scientifically by: systematically identifying the effect of changing one component at a time in a circuit; designing and making a set of traffic lights, a burglar alarm or some other useful circuit.

## Key stage 3

The principal focus of science teaching in key stage 3 is to develop a deeper understanding of a range of scientific ideas in the subject disciplines of biology, chemistry and physics. Pupils should begin to see the connections between these subject areas and become aware of some of the big ideas underpinning scientific knowledge and understanding. Examples of these big ideas are the links between structure and function in living organisms, the particulate model as the key to understanding the properties and interactions of matter in all its forms, and the resources and means of transfer of energy as key determinants of all of these interactions. They should be encouraged to relate scientific explanations to phenomena in the world around them and start to use modelling and abstract ideas to develop and evaluate explanations.

Pupils should understand that science is about working objectively, modifying explanations to take account of new evidence and ideas and subjecting results to peer review. Pupils should decide on the appropriate type of scientific enquiry to undertake to answer their own questions and develop a deeper understanding of factors to be taken into account when collecting, recording and processing data. They should evaluate their results and identify further questions arising from them.

‘Working scientifically’ is described separately at the beginning of the programme of study, but must always be taught through and clearly related to substantive science content in the programme of study. Teachers should feel free to choose examples that serve a variety of purposes, from showing how scientific ideas have developed historically to reflecting modern developments in science.

Pupils should develop their use of scientific vocabulary, including the use of scientific nomenclature and units and mathematical representations.



## Working scientifically

Through the content across all three disciplines, pupils should be taught to:

### Scientific attitudes

- pay attention to objectivity and concern for accuracy, precision, repeatability and reproducibility
- understand that scientific methods and theories develop as earlier explanations are modified to take account of new evidence and ideas, together with the importance of publishing results and peer review
- evaluate risks.

### Experimental skills and investigations

- ask questions and develop a line of enquiry based on observations of the real world, alongside prior knowledge and experience
- make predictions using scientific knowledge and understanding
- select, plan and carry out the most appropriate types of scientific enquiries to test predictions, including identifying independent, dependent and control variables, where appropriate
- use appropriate techniques, apparatus, and materials during fieldwork and laboratory work, paying attention to health and safety
- make and record observations and measurements using a range of methods for different investigations; and evaluate the reliability of methods and suggest possible improvements
- apply sampling techniques.

### Analysis and evaluation

- apply mathematical concepts and calculate results
- present observations and data using appropriate methods, including tables and graphs
- interpret observations and data, including identifying patterns and using observations, measurements and data to draw conclusions
- present reasoned explanations, including explaining data in relation to predictions and hypotheses
- evaluate data, showing awareness of potential sources of random and systematic error
- identify further questions arising from their results.

### Measurement

- understand and use SI units and IUPAC (International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry) chemical nomenclature
- use and derive simple equations and carry out appropriate calculations

## Science

- undertake basic data analysis including simple statistical techniques.

## Subject content – Biology

Pupils should be taught about:

### Structure and function of living organisms

#### Cells and organisation

- cells as the fundamental unit of living organisms, including how to observe, interpret and record cell structure using a light microscope
- the functions of the cell wall, cell membrane, cytoplasm, nucleus, vacuole, mitochondria and chloroplasts
- the similarities and differences between plant and animal cells
- the role of diffusion in the movement of materials in and between cells
- the structural adaptations of some unicellular organisms
- the hierarchical organisation of multicellular organisms: from cells to tissues to organs to systems to organisms.

#### The skeletal and muscular systems

- the structure and functions of the human skeleton, to include support, protection, movement and making blood cells
- biomechanics – the interaction between skeleton and muscles, including the measurement of force exerted by different muscles
- the function of muscles and examples of antagonistic muscles.

#### Nutrition and digestion

- content of a healthy human diet: carbohydrates, lipids (fats and oils), proteins, vitamins, minerals, dietary fibre and water, and why each is needed
- calculations of energy requirements in a healthy daily diet
- the consequences of imbalances in the diet, including obesity, starvation and deficiency diseases
- the tissues and organs of the human digestive system, including adaptations to function and how the digestive system digests food (enzymes simply as biological catalysts)
- the importance of bacteria in the human digestive system
- plants making carbohydrates in their leaves by photosynthesis and gaining mineral nutrients and water from the soil via their roots.

#### Gas exchange systems

- the structure and functions of the gas exchange system in humans, including adaptations to function

## Science

- the mechanism of breathing to move air in and out of the lungs, using a pressure model to explain the movement of gases, including simple measurements of lung volume
- the impact of exercise, asthma and smoking on the human gas exchange system
- the role of leaf stomata in gas exchange in plants.

## Reproduction

- reproduction in humans (as an example of a mammal), including the structure and function of the male and female reproductive systems, menstrual cycle (without details of hormones), gametes, fertilisation, gestation and birth, to include the effect of maternal lifestyle on the foetus through the placenta
- reproduction in plants, including flower structure, wind and insect pollination, fertilisation, seed and fruit formation and dispersal, including quantitative investigation of some dispersal mechanisms.

## Health

- the effects of recreational drugs (including substance misuse) on behaviour, health and life processes.

## Material cycles and energy

### Photosynthesis

- the reactants in, and products of, photosynthesis, and a word summary for photosynthesis
- the dependence of almost all life on Earth on the ability of photosynthetic organisms, such as plants and algae, to use sunlight in photosynthesis to build organic molecules that are an essential energy store and to maintain levels of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the atmosphere
- the adaptations of leaves for photosynthesis.

### Cellular respiration

- aerobic and anaerobic respiration in living organisms, including the breakdown of organic molecules to enable all the other chemical processes necessary for life
- a word summary for aerobic respiration
- the process of anaerobic respiration in humans and micro-organisms, including fermentation, and a word summary for anaerobic respiration
- the differences between aerobic and anaerobic respiration in terms of the reactants, the products formed and the implications for the organism.

## Interactions and interdependencies

### Relationships in an ecosystem

- the interdependence of organisms in an ecosystem, including food webs and insect pollinated crops
- the importance of plant reproduction through insect pollination in human food security
- how organisms affect, and are affected by, their environment, including the accumulation of toxic materials.

## Genetics and evolution

### Inheritance, chromosomes, DNA and genes

- heredity as the process by which genetic information is transmitted from one generation to the next
- a simple model of chromosomes, genes and DNA in heredity, including the part played by Watson, Crick, Wilkins and Franklin in the development of the DNA model
- differences between species
- the variation between individuals within a species being continuous or discontinuous, to include measurement and graphical representation of variation
- the variation between species and between individuals of the same species means some organisms compete more successfully, which can drive natural selection
- changes in the environment may leave individuals within a species, and some entire species, less well adapted to compete successfully and reproduce, which in turn may lead to extinction
- the importance of maintaining biodiversity and the use of gene banks to preserve hereditary material.

## Subject content – Chemistry

Pupils should be taught about:

### The particulate nature of matter

- the properties of the different states of matter (solid, liquid and gas) in terms of the particle model, including gas pressure
- changes of state in terms of the particle model.

### Atoms, elements and compounds

- a simple (Dalton) atomic model
- differences between atoms, elements and compounds
- chemical symbols and formulae for elements and compounds
- conservation of mass changes of state and chemical reactions.

### Pure and impure substances

- the concept of a pure substance
- mixtures, including dissolving
- diffusion in terms of the particle model
- simple techniques for separating mixtures: filtration, evaporation, distillation and chromatography
- the identification of pure substances.

### Chemical reactions

- chemical reactions as the rearrangement of atoms
- representing chemical reactions using formulae and using equations
- combustion, thermal decomposition, oxidation and displacement reactions
- defining acids and alkalis in terms of neutralisation reactions
- the pH scale for measuring acidity/alkalinity; and indicators
- reactions of acids with metals to produce a salt plus hydrogen
- reactions of acids with alkalis to produce a salt plus water
- what catalysts do.

### Energetics

- energy changes on changes of state (qualitative)
- exothermic and endothermic chemical reactions (qualitative).

## Science

### The Periodic Table

- the varying physical and chemical properties of different elements
- the principles underpinning the Mendeleev Periodic Table
- the Periodic Table: periods and groups; metals and non-metals
- how patterns in reactions can be predicted with reference to the Periodic Table
- the properties of metals and non-metals
- the chemical properties of metal and non-metal oxides with respect to acidity.

### Materials

- the order of metals and carbon in the reactivity series
- the use of carbon in obtaining metals from metal oxides
- properties of ceramics, polymers and composites (qualitative).

### Earth and atmosphere

- the composition of the Earth
- the structure of the Earth
- the rock cycle and the formation of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks
- Earth as a source of limited resources and the efficacy of recycling
- the carbon cycle
- the composition of the atmosphere
- the production of carbon dioxide by human activity and the impact on climate.

## Subject content – Physics

Pupils should be taught about:

### Energy

#### Calculation of fuel uses and costs in the domestic context

- comparing energy values of different foods (from labels) (kJ)
- comparing power ratings of appliances in watts (W, kW)
- comparing amounts of energy transferred (J, kJ, kW hour)
- domestic fuel bills, fuel use and costs
- fuels and energy resources.

#### Energy changes and transfers

- simple machines give bigger force but at the expense of smaller movement (and vice versa): product of force and displacement unchanged
- heating and thermal equilibrium: temperature difference between two objects leading to energy transfer from the hotter to the cooler one, through contact (conduction) or radiation; such transfers tending to reduce the temperature difference: use of insulators
- other processes that involve energy transfer: changing motion, dropping an object, completing an electrical circuit, stretching a spring, metabolism of food, burning fuels.

#### Changes in systems

- energy as a quantity that can be quantified and calculated; the total energy has the same value before and after a change
- comparing the starting with the final conditions of a system and describing increases and decreases in the amounts of energy associated with movements, temperatures, changes in positions in a field, in elastic distortions and in chemical compositions
- using physical processes and mechanisms, rather than energy, to explain the intermediate steps that bring about such changes.

### Motion and forces

#### Describing motion

- speed and the quantitative relationship between average speed, distance and time (speed = distance ÷ time)
- the representation of a journey on a distance-time graph
- relative motion: trains and cars passing one another.

#### Forces

- forces as pushes or pulls, arising from the interaction between two objects



## Science

- using force arrows in diagrams, adding forces in one dimension, balanced and unbalanced forces
- moment as the turning effect of a force
- forces: associated with deforming objects; stretching and squashing – springs; with rubbing and friction between surfaces, with pushing things out of the way; resistance to motion of air and water
- forces measured in newtons, measurements of stretch or compression as force is changed
- force-extension linear relation; Hooke's Law as a special case
- work done and energy changes on deformation
- non-contact forces: gravity forces acting at a distance on Earth and in space, forces between magnets and forces due to static electricity.

### Pressure in fluids

- atmospheric pressure, decreases with increase of height as weight of air above decreases with height
- pressure in liquids, increasing with depth; upthrust effects, floating and sinking
- pressure measured by ratio of force over area – acting normal to any surface.

### Balanced forces

- opposing forces and equilibrium: weight held by stretched spring or supported on a compressed surface.

### Forces and motion

- forces being needed to cause objects to stop or start moving, or to change their speed or direction of motion (qualitative only)
- change depending on direction of force and its size.

## Waves

### Observed waves

- waves on water as undulations which travel through water with transverse motion; these waves can be reflected, and add or cancel – superposition.

### Sound waves

- frequencies of sound waves, measured in hertz (Hz); echoes, reflection and absorption of sound
- sound needs a medium to travel, the speed of sound in air, in water, in solids
- sound produced by vibrations of objects, in loud speakers, detected by their effects on microphone diaphragm and the ear drum; sound waves are longitudinal

## Science

- auditory range of humans and animals.

## Energy and waves

- pressure waves transferring energy; use for cleaning and physiotherapy by ultra-sound; waves transferring information for conversion to electrical signals by microphone.

## Light waves

- the similarities and differences between light waves and waves in matter
- light waves travelling through a vacuum; speed of light
- the transmission of light through materials: absorption, diffuse scattering and specular reflection at a surface
- use of ray model to explain imaging in mirrors, the pinhole camera, the refraction of light and action of convex lens in focusing (qualitative); the human eye
- light transferring energy from source to absorber leading to chemical and electrical effects; photo-sensitive material in the retina and in cameras
- colours and the different frequencies of light, white light and prisms (qualitative only); differential colour effects in absorption and diffuse reflection.

## Electricity and electromagnetism

### Current electricity

- electric current, measured in amperes, in circuits, series and parallel circuits, currents add where branches meet and current as flow of charge
- potential difference, measured in volts, battery and bulb ratings; resistance, measured in ohms, as the ratio of potential difference (p.d.) to current
- differences in resistance between conducting and insulating components (quantitative).

### Static electricity

- separation of positive or negative charges when objects are rubbed together: transfer of electrons, forces between charged objects
- the idea of electric field, forces acting across the space between objects not in contact.

### Magnetism

- magnetic poles, attraction and repulsion
- magnetic fields by plotting with compass, representation by field lines
- Earth's magnetism, compass and navigation
- the magnetic effect of a current, electromagnets, D.C. motors (principles only).

## Matter

### Physical changes

- conservation of material and of mass, and reversibility, in melting, freezing, evaporation, sublimation, condensation, dissolving
- similarities and differences, including density differences, between solids, liquids and gases
- Brownian motion in gases
- diffusion in liquids and gases driven by differences in concentration
- the difference between chemical and physical changes.

### Particle model

- the differences in arrangements, in motion and in closeness of particles explaining changes of state, shape and density, the anomaly of ice-water transition
- atoms and molecules as particles.

### Energy in matter

- changes with temperature in motion and spacing of particles
- internal energy stored in materials.

### Space physics

- gravity force, weight = mass x gravitational field strength (g), on Earth  $g=10 \text{ N/kg}$ , different on other planets and stars; gravity forces between Earth and Moon, and between Earth and Sun (qualitative only)
- our Sun as a star, other stars in our galaxy, other galaxies
- the seasons and the Earth's tilt, day length at different times of year, in different hemispheres
- the light year as a unit of astronomical distance.

## Key stage 4

Teaching in the sciences in key stage 4 continues with the process of building upon and deepening scientific knowledge and the understanding of ideas developed in earlier key stages in the subject disciplines of biology, chemistry and physics.

For some students, studying the sciences in key stage 4 provides the platform for more advanced studies, establishing the basis for a wide range of careers. For others, it will be their last formal study of subjects that provide the foundations for understanding the natural world and will enhance their lives in an increasingly technological society.

Science is changing our lives and is vital to the world's future prosperity, and all students should be taught essential aspects of the knowledge, methods, processes and uses of science. They should be helped to appreciate the achievements of science in showing how the complex and diverse phenomena of the natural world can be described in terms of a number of key ideas relating to the sciences which are inter-linked, and which are of universal application. These key ideas include:

- the use of conceptual models and theories to make sense of the observed diversity of natural phenomena
- the assumption that every effect has one or more cause
- that change is driven by interactions between different objects and systems
- that many such interactions occur over a distance and over time
- that science progresses through a cycle of hypothesis, practical experimentation, observation, theory development and review
- that quantitative analysis is a central element both of many theories and of scientific methods of inquiry.

The sciences should be taught in ways that ensure students have the knowledge to enable them to develop curiosity about the natural world, insight into working scientifically, and appreciation of the relevance of science to their everyday lives, so that students:

- develop scientific knowledge and conceptual understanding through the specific disciplines of biology, chemistry and physics;
- develop understanding of the nature, processes and methods of science, through different types of scientific enquiry that help them to answer scientific questions about the world around them;
- develop and learn to apply observational, practical, modelling, enquiry, problem-solving skills and mathematical skills, both in the laboratory, in the field and in other environments;

## Science

- develop their ability to evaluate claims based on science through critical analysis of the methodology, evidence and conclusions, both qualitatively and quantitatively.

Curricula at key stage 4 should comprise approximately equal proportions of biology, chemistry and physics. The relevant mathematical skills required are covered in the programme of study for mathematics and should be embedded in the science context.

‘Working scientifically’ is described separately at the beginning of the programme of study, but must always be taught through and clearly related to substantive science content in the programme of study. Teachers should feel free to choose examples that serve a variety of purposes, from showing how scientific ideas have developed historically to reflecting modern developments in science and informing students of the role of science in understanding the causes of and solutions to some of the challenges facing society.

The scope and nature of their study should be broad, coherent, practical and rigorous, so that students are inspired and challenged by the subject and its achievements.

## Working scientifically

Through the content across all three disciplines, students should be taught so that they develop understanding and first-hand experience of:

### The development of scientific thinking

- the ways in which scientific methods and theories develop over time
- using a variety of concepts and models to develop scientific explanations and understanding
- appreciating the power and limitations of science and considering ethical issues which may arise
- explaining everyday and technological applications of science; evaluating associated personal, social, economic and environmental implications; and making decisions based on the evaluation of evidence and arguments
- evaluating risks both in practical science and the wider societal context, including perception of risk
- recognising the importance of peer review of results and of communication of results to a range of audiences.

### Experimental skills and strategies

- using scientific theories and explanations to develop hypotheses
- planning experiments to make observations, test hypotheses or explore phenomena
- applying a knowledge of a range of techniques, apparatus, and materials to select those appropriate both for fieldwork and for experiments
- carrying out experiments appropriately, having due regard to the correct manipulation of apparatus, the accuracy of measurements and health and safety considerations
- recognising when to apply a knowledge of sampling techniques to ensure any samples collected are representative
- making and recording observations and measurements using a range of apparatus and methods
- evaluating methods and suggesting possible improvements and further investigations.

### Analysis and evaluation

- applying the cycle of collecting, presenting and analysing data, including:
- presenting observations and other data using appropriate methods
- translating data from one form to another
- carrying out and representing mathematical and statistical analysis

## Science

- representing distributions of results and making estimations of uncertainty
- interpreting observations and other data, including identifying patterns and trends, making inferences and drawing conclusions
- presenting reasoned explanations, including relating data to hypotheses
- being objective, evaluating data in terms of accuracy, precision, repeatability and reproducibility and identifying potential sources of random and systematic error
- communicating the scientific rationale for investigations, including the methods used, the findings and reasoned conclusions, using paper-based and electronic reports and presentations.

## Vocabulary, units, symbols and nomenclature

- developing their use of scientific vocabulary and nomenclature
- recognising the importance of scientific quantities and understanding how they are determined
- using SI units and IUPAC chemical nomenclature unless inappropriate
- using prefixes and powers of ten for orders of magnitude (e.g. tera, giga, mega, kilo, centi, milli, micro and nano)
- interconverting units
- using an appropriate number of significant figures in calculations.

## Subject content – Biology

Biology is the science of living organisms (including animals, plants, fungi and microorganisms) and their interactions with each other and the environment. The study of biology involves collecting and interpreting information about the natural world to identify patterns and relate possible cause and effect. Biology is used to help humans improve their own lives and to understand the world around them.

Students should be helped to understand how, through the ideas of biology, the complex and diverse phenomena of the natural world can be described in terms of a number of key ideas which are of universal application, and which can be illustrated in the separate topics set out below. These ideas include:

- life processes depend on molecules whose structure is related to their function
- the fundamental units of living organisms are cells, which may be part of highly adapted structures including tissues, organs and organ systems, enabling life processes to be performed more effectively
- living organisms may form populations of single species, communities of many species and ecosystems, interacting with each other, with the environment and with humans in many different ways
- living organisms are interdependent and show adaptations to their environment
- life on Earth is dependent on photosynthesis in which green plants and algae trap light from the Sun to fix carbon dioxide and combine it with hydrogen from water to make organic compounds and oxygen
- organic compounds are used as fuels in cellular respiration to allow the other chemical reactions necessary for life
- the chemicals in ecosystems are continually cycling through the natural world
- the characteristics of a living organism are influenced by its genome and its interaction with the environment
- evolution occurs by the process of natural selection and accounts both for biodiversity and how organisms are all related to varying degrees.

Students should be taught about:

### Cell biology

- cells as the basic structural unit of all organisms; adaptations of cells related to their functions; the main sub-cellular structures of eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells
- stem cells in animals and meristems in plants
- enzymes
- factors affecting the rate of enzymatic reactions



## Science

- the importance of cellular respiration; the processes of aerobic and anaerobic respiration
- carbohydrates, proteins, nucleic acids and lipids as key biological molecules.

## Transport systems

- the need for transport systems in multicellular organisms, including plants
- the relationship between the structure and functions of the human circulatory system.

## Health, disease and the development of medicines

- the relationship between health and disease
- communicable diseases including sexually transmitted infections in humans (including HIV/AIDs)
- non-communicable diseases
- bacteria, viruses and fungi as pathogens in animals and plants
- body defences against pathogens and the role of the immune system against disease
- reducing and preventing the spread of infectious diseases in animals and plants
- the process of discovery and development of new medicines
- the impact of lifestyle factors on the incidence of non-communicable diseases.

## Coordination and control

- principles of nervous coordination and control in humans
- the relationship between the structure and function of the human nervous system
- the relationship between structure and function in a reflex arc
- principles of hormonal coordination and control in humans
- hormones in human reproduction, hormonal and non-hormonal methods of contraception
- homeostasis.

## Photosynthesis

- photosynthesis as the key process for food production and therefore biomass for life
- the process of photosynthesis
- factors affecting the rate of photosynthesis.

## Ecosystems

- levels of organisation within an ecosystem
- some abiotic and biotic factors which affect communities; the importance of interactions between organisms in a community
- how materials cycle through abiotic and biotic components of ecosystems
- the role of microorganisms (decomposers) in the cycling of materials through an ecosystem
- organisms are interdependent and are adapted to their environment
- the importance of biodiversity
- methods of identifying species and measuring distribution, frequency and abundance of species within a habitat
- positive and negative human interactions with ecosystems.

## Evolution, inheritance and variation

- the genome as the entire genetic material of an organism
- how the genome, and its interaction with the environment, influence the development of the phenotype of an organism
- the potential impact of genomics on medicine
- most phenotypic features being the result of multiple, rather than single, genes
- single gene inheritance and single gene crosses with dominant and recessive phenotypes
- sex determination in humans
- genetic variation in populations of a species
- the process of natural selection leading to evolution
- the evidence for evolution
- developments in biology affecting classification
- the importance of selective breeding of plants and animals in agriculture
- the uses of modern biotechnology including gene technology; some of the practical and ethical considerations of modern biotechnology.

## Subject content – Chemistry

Chemistry is the science of the composition, structure, properties and reactions of matter, understood in terms of atoms, atomic particles and the way they are arranged and link together. It is concerned with the synthesis, formulation, analysis and characteristic properties of substances and materials of all kinds.

Students should be helped to appreciate the achievements of chemistry in showing how the complex and diverse phenomena of both the natural and man-made worlds can be described in terms of a number of key ideas which are of universal application, and which can be illustrated in the separate topics set out below. These ideas include:

- matter is composed of tiny particles called atoms and there are about 100 different naturally-occurring types of atoms called elements
- elements show periodic relationships in their chemical and physical properties
- these periodic properties can be explained in terms of the atomic structure of the elements
- atoms bond either by transferring electrons from one atom to another or by sharing electrons
- the shapes of molecules (groups of atoms bonded together) and the way giant structures are arranged is of great importance in terms of the way they behave
- reactions can occur when molecules collide and do so at different rates due to differences in molecular collisions
- chemical reactions take place in only three different ways:
  - proton transfer
  - electron transfer
  - electron sharing
- energy is conserved in chemical reactions so can therefore be neither created nor destroyed.

Students should be taught about:

### Atomic structure and the Periodic Table

- a simple model of the atom consisting of the nucleus and electrons, relative atomic mass, electronic charge and isotopes
- the number of particles in a given mass of a substance
- the modern Periodic Table, showing elements arranged in order of atomic number
- position of elements in the Periodic Table in relation to their atomic structure and arrangement of outer electrons

## Science

- properties and trends in properties of elements in the same group
- characteristic properties of metals and non-metals
- chemical reactivity of elements in relation to their position in the Periodic Table.

## Structure, bonding and the properties of matter

- changes of state of matter in terms of particle kinetics, energy transfers and the relative strength of chemical bonds and intermolecular forces
- types of chemical bonding: ionic, covalent, and metallic
- bulk properties of materials related to bonding and intermolecular forces
- bonding of carbon leading to the vast array of natural and synthetic organic compounds that occur due to the ability of carbon to form families of similar compounds, chains and rings
- structures, bonding and properties of diamond, graphite, fullerenes and graphene.

## Chemical changes

- determination of empirical formulae from the ratio of atoms of different kinds
- balanced chemical equations, ionic equations and state symbols
- identification of common gases
- the chemistry of acids; reactions with some metals and carbonates
- pH as a measure of hydrogen ion concentration and its numerical scale
- electrolysis of molten ionic liquids and aqueous ionic solutions
- reduction and oxidation in terms of loss or gain of oxygen.

## Energy changes in chemistry

- Measurement of energy changes in chemical reactions (qualitative)
- Bond breaking, bond making, activation energy and reaction profiles (qualitative).

## Rate and extent of chemical change

- factors that influence the rate of reaction: varying temperature or concentration, changing the surface area of a solid reactant or by adding a catalyst
- factors affecting reversible reactions.

## Chemical analysis

- distinguishing between pure and impure substances

## Science

- separation techniques for mixtures of substances: filtration, crystallisation, chromatography, simple and fractional distillation
- quantitative interpretation of balanced equations
- concentrations of solutions in relation to mass of solute and volume of solvent.

## Chemical and allied industries

- life cycle assessment and recycling to assess environmental impacts associated with all the stages of a product's life
- the viability of recycling of certain materials
- carbon compounds, both as fuels and feedstock, and the competing demands for limited resources
- fractional distillation of crude oil and cracking to make more useful materials
- extraction and purification of metals related to the position of carbon in a reactivity series.

## Earth and atmospheric science

- evidence for composition and evolution of the Earth's atmosphere since its formation
- evidence, and uncertainties in evidence, for additional anthropogenic causes of climate change
- potential effects of, and mitigation of, increased levels of carbon dioxide and methane on the Earth's climate
- common atmospheric pollutants: sulphur dioxide, oxides of nitrogen, particulates and their sources
- the Earth's water resources and obtaining potable water.

## Subject content – Physics

Physics is the science of the fundamental concepts of field, force, radiation and particle structures, which are inter-linked to form unified models of the behaviour of the material universe. From such models, a wide range of ideas, from the broadest issue of the development of the universe over time to the numerous and detailed ways in which new technologies may be invented, have emerged. These have enriched both our basic understanding of, and our many adaptations to, our material environment.

Students should be helped to understand how, through the ideas of physics, the complex and diverse phenomena of the natural world can be described in terms of a number of key ideas which are of universal application and which can be illustrated in the separate topics set out below. These ideas include:

- the use of models, as in the particle model of matter or the wave models of light and of sound
- the concept of cause and effect in explaining such links as those between force and acceleration, or between changes in atomic nuclei and radioactive emissions
- the phenomena of ‘action at a distance’ and the related concept of the field as the key to analysing electrical, magnetic and gravitational effects
- that differences, for example between pressures or temperatures or electrical potentials, are the drivers of change
- that proportionality, for example between weight and mass of an object or between force and extension in a spring, is an important aspect of many models in science.

Students should be taught about:

### Energy

- energy changes in a system involving heating, doing work using forces, or doing work using an electric current; calculating the stored energies and energy changes involved
- power as the rate of transfer of energy
- conservation of energy in a closed system; dissipation
- calculating energy efficiency for any energy transfers
- renewable and non-renewable energy sources used on Earth; changes in how these are used.

### Forces

- forces and fields: electrostatic, magnetic, gravity
- forces as vectors
- calculating work done as force  $\times$  distance; elastic and inelastic stretching

## Science

- pressure in fluids acts in all directions: variation in Earth's atmosphere with height, with depth for liquids, up-thrust force (qualitative).

## Forces and motion

- speed of sound; estimating speeds and accelerations in everyday contexts
- interpreting quantitatively graphs of distance, time, and speed
- acceleration caused by forces; Newton's First Law
- weight and gravitational field strength
- decelerations and braking distances involved on roads.

## Wave motion

- amplitude, wavelength and frequency; relating velocity to frequency and wavelength
- transverse and longitudinal waves
- electromagnetic waves and their velocity in vacuum; waves transferring energy; wavelengths and frequencies from radio to gamma-rays
- velocities differing between media: absorption, reflection, refraction effects
- production and detection, by electrical circuits, or by changes in atoms and nuclei
- uses in the radio, microwave, infra-red, visible, ultra-violet, X-ray and gamma-ray regions, hazardous effects on bodily tissues.

## Electricity

- measuring resistance using p.d. and current measurements
- exploring current, resistance and voltage relationships for different circuit elements, including their graphical representations
- quantity of charge flowing as the product of current and time
- drawing circuit diagrams; exploring equivalent resistance for resistors in series
- the domestic a.c. supply; live, neutral and earth mains wires; safety measures
- power transfer related to p.d. and current, or current and resistance.

## Magnetism and electromagnetism

- exploring the magnetic fields of permanent and induced magnets, and the Earth's magnetic field, using a compass
- magnetic effects of currents; how solenoids enhance the effect
- how transformers are used in the national grid and the reasons for their use.

## The structure of matter

- relating models of arrangements and motions of the molecules in solid, liquid and gas phases to their densities
- melting, evaporation, and sublimation as reversible changes
- calculating energy changes involved on heating, using specific heat capacity; and those involved in changes of state, using specific latent heat
- links between pressure and temperature of a gas at constant volume, related to the motion of its particles (qualitative).

## Atomic structure

- the nuclear model and its development in the light of changing evidence
- masses and sizes of nuclei, atoms and small molecules
- differences in numbers of protons and neutrons related to masses and identities of nuclei; isotope characteristics and equations to represent changes
- ionisation; absorption or emission of radiation related to changes in electron orbits
- radioactive nuclei; emission of alpha or beta particles, neutrons, or gamma-rays, related to changes in the nuclear mass and/or charge
- radioactive materials, half-life, irradiation, contamination and their associated hazardous effects; waste disposal
- nuclear fission, nuclear fusion and our Sun's energy

## Space physics

- the main features of the solar system.



# Art and design

## Purpose of study

Art, craft and design embody some of the highest forms of human creativity. A high-quality art and design education should engage, inspire and challenge pupils, equipping them with the knowledge and skills to experiment, invent and create their own works of art, craft and design. As pupils progress, they should be able to think critically and develop a more rigorous understanding of art and design. They should also know how art and design both reflect and shape our history, and contribute to the culture, creativity and wealth of our nation.

## Aims

The national curriculum for art and design aims to ensure that all pupils:

- produce creative work, exploring their ideas and recording their experiences
- become proficient in drawing, painting, sculpture and other art, craft and design techniques
- evaluate and analyse creative works using the language of art, craft and design
- know about great artists, craft makers and designers, and understand the historical and cultural development of their art forms.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should be taught:

- to use a range of materials creatively to design and make products
- to use drawing, painting and sculpture to develop and share their ideas, experiences and imagination
- to develop a wide range of art and design techniques in using colour, pattern, texture, line, shape, form and space
- about the work of a range of artists, craft makers and designers, describing the differences and similarities between different practices and disciplines, and making links to their own work.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should be taught to develop their techniques, including their control and their use of materials, with creativity, experimentation and an increasing awareness of different kinds of art, craft and design.

Pupils should be taught:

- to create sketch books to record their observations and use them to review and revisit ideas
- to improve their mastery of art and design techniques, including drawing, painting and sculpture with a range of materials [for example, pencil, charcoal, paint, clay]
- about great artists, architects and designers in history.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should be taught to develop their creativity and ideas, and increase proficiency in their execution. They should develop a critical understanding of artists, architects and designers, expressing reasoned judgements that can inform their own work.

Pupils should be taught:

- to use a range of techniques to record their observations in sketchbooks, journals and other media as a basis for exploring their ideas
- to use a range of techniques and media, including painting
- to increase their proficiency in the handling of different materials
- to analyse and evaluate their own work, and that of others, in order to strengthen the visual impact or applications of their work
- about the history of art, craft, design and architecture, including periods, styles and major movements from ancient times up to the present day.

# Citizenship

## Purpose of study

A high-quality citizenship education helps to provide pupils with knowledge, skills and understanding to prepare them to play a full and active part in society. In particular, citizenship education should foster pupils' keen awareness and understanding of democracy, government and how laws are made and upheld. Teaching should equip pupils with the skills and knowledge to explore political and social issues critically, to weigh evidence, debate and make reasoned arguments. It should also prepare pupils to take their place in society as responsible citizens, manage their money well and make sound financial decisions.

## Aims

The national curriculum for citizenship aims to ensure that all pupils:

- acquire a sound knowledge and understanding of how the United Kingdom is governed, its political system and how citizens participate actively in its democratic systems of government
- develop a sound knowledge and understanding of the role of law and the justice system in our society and how laws are shaped and enforced
- develop an interest in, and commitment to, participation in volunteering as well as other forms of responsible activity, that they will take with them into adulthood
- are equipped with the skills to think critically and debate political questions, to enable them to manage their money on a day-to-day basis, and plan for future financial needs.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

## Subject content

### Key stage 3

Teaching should develop pupils' understanding of democracy, government and the rights and responsibilities of citizens. Pupils should use and apply their knowledge and understanding whilst developing skills to research and interrogate evidence, debate and evaluate viewpoints, present reasoned arguments and take informed action.

Pupils should be taught about:

- the development of the political system of democratic government in the United Kingdom, including the roles of citizens, Parliament and the monarch
- the operation of Parliament, including voting and elections, and the role of political parties
- the precious liberties enjoyed by the citizens of the United Kingdom
- the nature of rules and laws and the justice system, including the role of the police and the operation of courts and tribunals
- the roles played by public institutions and voluntary groups in society, and the ways in which citizens work together to improve their communities, including opportunities to participate in school-based activities
- the functions and uses of money, the importance and practice of budgeting, and managing risk.

### Key stage 4

Teaching should build on the key stage 3 programme of study to deepen pupils' understanding of democracy, government and the rights and responsibilities of citizens. Pupils should develop their skills to be able to use a range of research strategies, weigh up evidence, make persuasive arguments and substantiate their conclusions. They should experience and evaluate different ways that citizens can act together to solve problems and contribute to society.

Pupils should be taught about:

- parliamentary democracy and the key elements of the constitution of the United Kingdom, including the power of government, the role of citizens and Parliament in holding those in power to account, and the different roles of the executive, legislature and judiciary and a free press
- the different electoral systems used in and beyond the United Kingdom and actions citizens can take in democratic and electoral processes to influence decisions locally, nationally and beyond
- other systems and forms of government, both democratic and non-democratic, beyond the United Kingdom

## Citizenship

- local, regional and international governance and the United Kingdom's relations with the rest of Europe, the Commonwealth, the United Nations and the wider world
- human rights and international law
- the legal system in the UK, different sources of law and how the law helps society deal with complex problems
- diverse national, regional, religious and ethnic identities in the United Kingdom and the need for mutual respect and understanding
- the different ways in which a citizen can contribute to the improvement of his or her community, to include the opportunity to participate actively in community volunteering, as well as other forms of responsible activity
- income and expenditure, credit and debt, insurance, savings and pensions, financial products and services, and how public money is raised and spent.

# Computing

## Purpose of study

A high-quality computing education equips pupils to use computational thinking and creativity to understand and change the world. Computing has deep links with mathematics, science, and design and technology, and provides insights into both natural and artificial systems. The core of computing is computer science, in which pupils are taught the principles of information and computation, how digital systems work, and how to put this knowledge to use through programming. Building on this knowledge and understanding, pupils are equipped to use information technology to create programs, systems and a range of content. Computing also ensures that pupils become digitally literate – able to use, and express themselves and develop their ideas through, information and communication technology – at a level suitable for the future workplace and as active participants in a digital world.

## Aims

The national curriculum for computing aims to ensure that all pupils:

- can understand and apply the fundamental principles and concepts of computer science, including abstraction, logic, algorithms and data representation
- can analyse problems in computational terms, and have repeated practical experience of writing computer programs in order to solve such problems
- can evaluate and apply information technology, including new or unfamiliar technologies, analytically to solve problems
- are responsible, competent, confident and creative users of information and communication technology.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should be taught to:

- understand what algorithms are; how they are implemented as programs on digital devices; and that programs execute by following precise and unambiguous instructions
- create and debug simple programs
- use logical reasoning to predict the behaviour of simple programs
- use technology purposefully to create, organise, store, manipulate and retrieve digital content
- recognise common uses of information technology beyond school
- use technology safely and respectfully, keeping personal information private; identify where to go for help and support when they have concerns about content or contact on the internet or other online technologies.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should be taught to:

- design, write and debug programs that accomplish specific goals, including controlling or simulating physical systems; solve problems by decomposing them into smaller parts
- use sequence, selection, and repetition in programs; work with variables and various forms of input and output
- use logical reasoning to explain how some simple algorithms work and to detect and correct errors in algorithms and programs
- understand computer networks including the internet; how they can provide multiple services, such as the world wide web; and the opportunities they offer for communication and collaboration
- use search technologies effectively, appreciate how results are selected and ranked, and be discerning in evaluating digital content
- select, use and combine a variety of software (including internet services) on a range of digital devices to design and create a range of programs, systems and content that accomplish given goals, including collecting, analysing, evaluating and presenting data and information
- use technology safely, respectfully and responsibly; recognise acceptable/unacceptable behaviour; identify a range of ways to report concerns about content and contact.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should be taught to:

- design, use and evaluate computational abstractions that model the state and behaviour of real-world problems and physical systems
- understand several key algorithms that reflect computational thinking [for example, ones for sorting and searching]; use logical reasoning to compare the utility of alternative algorithms for the same problem
- use two or more programming languages, at least one of which is textual, to solve a variety of computational problems; make appropriate use of data structures [for example, lists, tables or arrays]; design and develop modular programs that use procedures or functions
- understand simple Boolean logic [for example, AND, OR and NOT] and some of its uses in circuits and programming; understand how numbers can be represented in binary, and be able to carry out simple operations on binary numbers [for example, binary addition, and conversion between binary and decimal]
- understand the hardware and software components that make up computer systems, and how they communicate with one another and with other systems
- understand how instructions are stored and executed within a computer system; understand how data of various types (including text, sounds and pictures) can be represented and manipulated digitally, in the form of binary digits
- undertake creative projects that involve selecting, using, and combining multiple applications, preferably across a range of devices, to achieve challenging goals, including collecting and analysing data and meeting the needs of known users
- create, re-use, revise and re-purpose digital artefacts for a given audience, with attention to trustworthiness, design and usability
- understand a range of ways to use technology safely, respectfully, responsibly and securely, including protecting their online identity and privacy; recognise inappropriate content, contact and conduct and know how to report concerns.



### Key stage 4

All pupils must have the opportunity to study aspects of information technology and computer science at sufficient depth to allow them to progress to higher levels of study or to a professional career.

All pupils should be taught to:

- develop their capability, creativity and knowledge in computer science, digital media and information technology
- develop and apply their analytic, problem-solving, design, and computational thinking skills
- understand how changes in technology affect safety, including new ways to protect their online privacy and identity, and how to identify and report a range of concerns.

# Design and technology

## Purpose of study

Design and technology is an inspiring, rigorous and practical subject. Using creativity and imagination, pupils design and make products that solve real and relevant problems within a variety of contexts, considering their own and others' needs, wants and values. They acquire a broad range of subject knowledge and draw on disciplines such as mathematics, science, engineering, computing and art. Pupils learn how to take risks, becoming resourceful, innovative, enterprising and capable citizens. Through the evaluation of past and present design and technology, they develop a critical understanding of its impact on daily life and the wider world. High-quality design and technology education makes an essential contribution to the creativity, culture, wealth and well-being of the nation.

## Aims

The national curriculum for design and technology aims to ensure that all pupils:

- develop the creative, technical and practical expertise needed to perform everyday tasks confidently and to participate successfully in an increasingly technological world
- build and apply a repertoire of knowledge, understanding and skills in order to design and make high-quality prototypes and products for a wide range of users
- critique, evaluate and test their ideas and products and the work of others
- understand and apply the principles of nutrition and learn how to cook.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Through a variety of creative and practical activities, pupils should be taught the knowledge, understanding and skills needed to engage in an iterative process of designing and making. They should work in a range of relevant contexts [for example, the home and school, gardens and playgrounds, the local community, industry and the wider environment].

When designing and making, pupils should be taught to:

#### Design

- design purposeful, functional, appealing products for themselves and other users based on design criteria
- generate, develop, model and communicate their ideas through talking, drawing, templates, mock-ups and, where appropriate, information and communication technology

#### Make

- select from and use a range of tools and equipment to perform practical tasks [for example, cutting, shaping, joining and finishing]
- select from and use a wide range of materials and components, including construction materials, textiles and ingredients, according to their characteristics

#### Evaluate

- explore and evaluate a range of existing products
- evaluate their ideas and products against design criteria

#### Technical knowledge

- build structures, exploring how they can be made stronger, stiffer and more stable
- explore and use mechanisms [for example, levers, sliders, wheels and axles], in their products.

### Key stage 2

Through a variety of creative and practical activities, pupils should be taught the knowledge, understanding and skills needed to engage in an iterative process of designing and making. They should work in a range of relevant contexts [for example, the home, school, leisure, culture, enterprise, industry and the wider environment].

When designing and making, pupils should be taught to:

#### Design

- use research and develop design criteria to inform the design of innovative, functional, appealing products that are fit for purpose, aimed at particular individuals or groups
- generate, develop, model and communicate their ideas through discussion, annotated sketches, cross-sectional and exploded diagrams, prototypes, pattern pieces and computer-aided design

#### Make

- select from and use a wider range of tools and equipment to perform practical tasks [for example, cutting, shaping, joining and finishing], accurately
- select from and use a wider range of materials and components, including construction materials, textiles and ingredients, according to their functional properties and aesthetic qualities

#### Evaluate

- investigate and analyse a range of existing products
- evaluate their ideas and products against their own design criteria and consider the views of others to improve their work
- understand how key events and individuals in design and technology have helped shape the world

#### Technical knowledge

- apply their understanding of how to strengthen, stiffen and reinforce more complex structures
- understand and use mechanical systems in their products [for example, gears, pulleys, cams, levers and linkages]
- understand and use electrical systems in their products [for example, series circuits incorporating switches, bulbs, buzzers and motors]
- apply their understanding of computing to program, monitor and control their products.

### Key stage 3

Through a variety of creative and practical activities, pupils should be taught the knowledge, understanding and skills needed to engage in an iterative process of designing and making. They should work in a range of domestic and local contexts [for example, the home, health, leisure and culture], and industrial contexts [for example, engineering, manufacturing, construction, food, energy, agriculture (including horticulture) and fashion].

When designing and making, pupils should be taught to:

#### Design

- use research and exploration, such as the study of different cultures, to identify and understand user needs
- identify and solve their own design problems and understand how to reformulate problems given to them
- develop specifications to inform the design of innovative, functional, appealing products that respond to needs in a variety of situations
- use a variety of approaches [for example, biomimicry and user-centred design], to generate creative ideas and avoid stereotypical responses
- develop and communicate design ideas using annotated sketches, detailed plans, 3-D and mathematical modelling, oral and digital presentations and computer-based tools

#### Make

- select from and use specialist tools, techniques, processes, equipment and machinery precisely, including computer-aided manufacture
- select from and use a wider, more complex range of materials, components and ingredients, taking into account their properties

#### Evaluate

- analyse the work of past and present professionals and others to develop and broaden their understanding
- investigate new and emerging technologies
- test, evaluate and refine their ideas and products against a specification, taking into account the views of intended users and other interested groups
- understand developments in design and technology, its impact on individuals, society and the environment, and the responsibilities of designers, engineers and technologists

#### Technical knowledge

- understand and use the properties of materials and the performance of structural elements to achieve functioning solutions
- understand how more advanced mechanical systems used in their products enable changes in movement and force

## Design and technology

- understand how more advanced electrical and electronic systems can be powered and used in their products [for example, circuits with heat, light, sound and movement as inputs and outputs]
- apply computing and use electronics to embed intelligence in products that respond to inputs [for example, sensors], and control outputs [for example, actuators], using programmable components [for example, microcontrollers].

## Cooking and nutrition

As part of their work with food, pupils should be taught how to cook and apply the principles of nutrition and healthy eating. Instilling a love of cooking in pupils will also open a door to one of the great expressions of human creativity. Learning how to cook is a crucial life skill that enables pupils to feed themselves and others affordably and well, now and in later life.

Pupils should be taught to:

### Key stage 1

- use the basic principles of a healthy and varied diet to prepare dishes
- understand where food comes from.

### Key stage 2

- understand and apply the principles of a healthy and varied diet
- prepare and cook a variety of predominantly savoury dishes using a range of cooking techniques
- understand seasonality, and know where and how a variety of ingredients are grown, reared, caught and processed.

### Key stage 3

- understand and apply the principles of nutrition and health
- cook a repertoire of predominantly savoury dishes so that they are able to feed themselves and others a healthy and varied diet
- become competent in a range of cooking techniques [for example, selecting and preparing ingredients; using utensils and electrical equipment; applying heat in different ways; using awareness of taste, texture and smell to decide how to season dishes and combine ingredients; adapting and using their own recipes]
- understand the source, seasonality and characteristics of a broad range of ingredients.

# Geography

## Purpose of study

A high-quality geography education should inspire in pupils a curiosity and fascination about the world and its people that will remain with them for the rest of their lives.

Teaching should equip pupils with knowledge about diverse places, people, resources and natural and human environments, together with a deep understanding of the Earth's key physical and human processes. As pupils progress, their growing knowledge about the world should help them to deepen their understanding of the interaction between physical and human processes, and of the formation and use of landscapes and environments. Geographical knowledge, understanding and skills provide the frameworks and approaches that explain how the Earth's features at different scales are shaped, interconnected and change over time.

## Aims

The national curriculum for geography aims to ensure that all pupils:

- develop contextual knowledge of the location of globally significant places – both terrestrial and marine – including their defining physical and human characteristics and how these provide a geographical context for understanding the actions of processes
- understand the processes that give rise to key physical and human geographical features of the world, how these are interdependent and how they bring about spatial variation and change over time
- are competent in the geographical skills needed to:
  - collect, analyse and communicate with a range of data gathered through experiences of fieldwork that deepen their understanding of geographical processes
  - interpret a range of sources of geographical information, including maps, diagrams, globes, aerial photographs and Geographical Information Systems (GIS)
  - communicate geographical information in a variety of ways, including through maps, numerical and quantitative skills and writing at length.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**



## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should develop knowledge about the world, the United Kingdom and their locality. They should understand basic subject-specific vocabulary relating to human and physical geography and begin to use geographical skills, including first-hand observation, to enhance their locational awareness.

Pupils should be taught to:

#### Locational knowledge

- name and locate the world's seven continents and five oceans
- name, locate and identify characteristics of the four countries and capital cities of the United Kingdom and its surrounding seas

#### Place knowledge

- understand geographical similarities and differences through studying the human and physical geography of a small area of the United Kingdom, and of a small area in a contrasting non-European country

#### Human and physical geography

- identify seasonal and daily weather patterns in the United Kingdom and the location of hot and cold areas of the world in relation to the Equator and the North and South Poles
- use basic geographical vocabulary to refer to:
  - key physical features, including: beach, cliff, coast, forest, hill, mountain, sea, ocean, river, soil, valley, vegetation, season and weather
  - key human features, including: city, town, village, factory, farm, house, office, port, harbour and shop

#### Geographical skills and fieldwork

- use world maps, atlases and globes to identify the United Kingdom and its countries, as well as the countries, continents and oceans studied at this key stage
- use simple compass directions (North, South, East and West) and locational and directional language [for example, near and far; left and right], to describe the location of features and routes on a map
- use aerial photographs and plan perspectives to recognise landmarks and basic human and physical features; devise a simple map; and use and construct basic symbols in a key
- use simple fieldwork and observational skills to study the geography of their school and its grounds and the key human and physical features of its surrounding environment.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should extend their knowledge and understanding beyond the local area to include the United Kingdom and Europe, North and South America. This will include the location and characteristics of a range of the world's most significant human and physical features. They should develop their use of geographical knowledge, understanding and skills to enhance their locational and place knowledge.

Pupils should be taught to:

#### Locational knowledge

- locate the world's countries, using maps to focus on Europe (including the location of Russia) and North and South America, concentrating on their environmental regions, key physical and human characteristics, countries, and major cities
- name and locate counties and cities of the United Kingdom, geographical regions and their identifying human and physical characteristics, key topographical features (including hills, mountains, coasts and rivers), and land-use patterns; and understand how some of these aspects have changed over time
- identify the position and significance of latitude, longitude, Equator, Northern Hemisphere, Southern Hemisphere, the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, Arctic and Antarctic Circle, the Prime/Greenwich Meridian and time zones (including day and night)

#### Place knowledge

- understand geographical similarities and differences through the study of human and physical geography of a region of the United Kingdom, a region in a European country, and a region within North or South America

#### Human and physical geography

- describe and understand key aspects of:
  - physical geography, including: climate zones, biomes and vegetation belts, rivers, mountains, volcanoes and earthquakes, and the water cycle
  - human geography, including: types of settlement and land use, economic activity including trade links, and the distribution of natural resources including energy, food, minerals and water

#### Geographical skills and fieldwork

- use maps, atlases, globes and digital/computer mapping to locate countries and describe features studied
- use the eight points of a compass, four and six-figure grid references, symbols and key (including the use of Ordnance Survey maps) to build their knowledge of the United Kingdom and the wider world

## Geography

- use fieldwork to observe, measure, record and present the human and physical features in the local area using a range of methods, including sketch maps, plans and graphs, and digital technologies.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should consolidate and extend their knowledge of the world's major countries and their physical and human features. They should understand how geographical processes interact to create distinctive human and physical landscapes that change over time. In doing so, they should become aware of increasingly complex geographical systems in the world around them. They should develop greater competence in using geographical knowledge, approaches and concepts [such as models and theories] and geographical skills in analysing and interpreting different data sources. In this way pupils will continue to enrich their locational knowledge and spatial and environmental understanding.

Pupils should be taught to:

#### Locational knowledge

- extend their locational knowledge and deepen their spatial awareness of the world's countries using maps of the world to focus on Africa, Russia, Asia (including China and India), and the Middle East, focusing on their environmental regions, including polar and hot deserts, key physical and human characteristics, countries and major cities

#### Place Knowledge

- understand geographical similarities, differences and links between places through the study of human and physical geography of a region within Africa, and of a region within Asia

#### Human and physical geography

- understand, through the use of detailed place-based exemplars at a variety of scales, the key processes in:
  - physical geography relating to: geological timescales and plate tectonics; rocks, weathering and soils; weather and climate, including the change in climate from the Ice Age to the present; and glaciation, hydrology and coasts
  - human geography relating to: population and urbanisation; international development; economic activity in the primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary sectors; and the use of natural resources
- understand how human and physical processes interact to influence, and change landscapes, environments and the climate; and how human activity relies on effective functioning of natural systems

## Geography

### Geographical skills and fieldwork

- build on their knowledge of globes, maps and atlases and apply and develop this knowledge routinely in the classroom and in the field
- interpret Ordnance Survey maps in the classroom and the field, including using grid references and scale, topographical and other thematic mapping, and aerial and satellite photographs
- use Geographical Information Systems (GIS) to view, analyse and interpret places and data
- use fieldwork in contrasting locations to collect, analyse and draw conclusions from geographical data, using multiple sources of increasingly complex information.

# History

## Purpose of study

A high-quality history education will help pupils gain a coherent knowledge and understanding of Britain's past and that of the wider world. It should inspire pupils' curiosity to know more about the past. Teaching should equip pupils to ask perceptive questions, think critically, weigh evidence, sift arguments, and develop perspective and judgement. History helps pupils to understand the complexity of people's lives, the process of change, the diversity of societies and relationships between different groups, as well as their own identity and the challenges of their time.

## Aims

The national curriculum for history aims to ensure that all pupils:

- know and understand the history of these islands as a coherent, chronological narrative, from the earliest times to the present day: how people's lives have shaped this nation and how Britain has influenced and been influenced by the wider world
- know and understand significant aspects of the history of the wider world: the nature of ancient civilisations; the expansion and dissolution of empires; characteristic features of past non-European societies; achievements and follies of mankind
- gain and deploy a historically grounded understanding of abstract terms such as 'empire', 'civilisation', 'parliament' and 'peasantry'
- understand historical concepts such as continuity and change, cause and consequence, similarity, difference and significance, and use them to make connections, draw contrasts, analyse trends, frame historically-valid questions and create their own structured accounts, including written narratives and analyses
- understand the methods of historical enquiry, including how evidence is used rigorously to make historical claims, and discern how and why contrasting arguments and interpretations of the past have been constructed
- gain historical perspective by placing their growing knowledge into different contexts, understanding the connections between local, regional, national and international history; between cultural, economic, military, political, religious and social history; and between short- and long-term timescales.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets] or the content indicated as being ‘non-statutory’.**

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should develop an awareness of the past, using common words and phrases relating to the passing of time. They should know where the people and events they study fit within a chronological framework and identify similarities and differences between ways of life in different periods. They should use a wide vocabulary of everyday historical terms. They should ask and answer questions, choosing and using parts of stories and other sources to show that they know and understand key features of events. They should understand some of the ways in which we find out about the past and identify different ways in which it is represented.

In planning to ensure the progression described above through teaching about the people, events and changes outlined below, teachers are often introducing pupils to historical periods that they will study more fully at key stages 2 and 3.

Pupils should be taught about:

- changes within living memory. Where appropriate, these should be used to reveal aspects of change in national life
- events beyond living memory that are significant nationally or globally [for example, the Great Fire of London, the first aeroplane flight or events commemorated through festivals or anniversaries]
- the lives of significant individuals in the past who have contributed to national and international achievements. Some should be used to compare aspects of life in different periods [for example, Elizabeth I and Queen Victoria, Christopher Columbus and Neil Armstrong, William Caxton and Tim Berners-Lee, Pieter Bruegel the Elder and LS Lowry, Rosa Parks and Emily Davison, Mary Seacole and/or Florence Nightingale and Edith Cavell]
- significant historical events, people and places in their own locality.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should continue to develop a chronologically secure knowledge and understanding of British, local and world history, establishing clear narratives within and across the periods they study. They should note connections, contrasts and trends over time and develop the appropriate use of historical terms. They should regularly address and sometimes devise historically valid questions about change, cause, similarity and difference, and significance. They should construct informed responses that involve thoughtful selection and organisation of relevant historical information. They should understand how our knowledge of the past is constructed from a range of sources.

## History

In planning to ensure the progression described above through teaching the British, local and world history outlined below, teachers should combine overview and depth studies to help pupils understand both the long arc of development and the complexity of specific aspects of the content.

Pupils should be taught about:

- changes in Britain from the Stone Age to the Iron Age

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- late Neolithic hunter-gatherers and early farmers, for example, Skara Brae
- Bronze Age religion, technology and travel, for example, Stonehenge
- Iron Age hill forts: tribal kingdoms, farming, art and culture

- the Roman Empire and its impact on Britain

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- Julius Caesar's attempted invasion in 55-54 BC
- the Roman Empire by AD 42 and the power of its army
- successful invasion by Claudius and conquest, including Hadrian's Wall
- British resistance, for example, Boudica
- 'Romanisation' of Britain: sites such as Caerwent and the impact of technology, culture and beliefs, including early Christianity

- Britain's settlement by Anglo-Saxons and Scots

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- Roman withdrawal from Britain in c. AD 410 and the fall of the western Roman Empire
- Scots invasions from Ireland to north Britain (now Scotland)
- Anglo-Saxon invasions, settlements and kingdoms: place names and village life
- Anglo-Saxon art and culture
- Christian conversion – Canterbury, Iona and Lindisfarne

## History

- the Viking and Anglo-Saxon struggle for the Kingdom of England to the time of Edward the Confessor

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- Viking raids and invasion
- resistance by Alfred the Great and Athelstan, first king of England
- further Viking invasions and Danegeld
- Anglo-Saxon laws and justice
- Edward the Confessor and his death in 1066

- a local history study

### Examples (non-statutory)

- a depth study linked to one of the British areas of study listed above
- a study over time tracing how several aspects of national history are reflected in the locality (this can go beyond 1066)
- a study of an aspect of history or a site dating from a period beyond 1066 that is significant in the locality.

- a study of an aspect or theme in British history that extends pupils' chronological knowledge beyond 1066

### Examples (non-statutory)

- the changing power of monarchs using case studies such as John, Anne and Victoria
- changes in an aspect of social history, such as crime and punishment from the Anglo-Saxons to the present or leisure and entertainment in the 20<sup>th</sup> Century
- the legacy of Greek or Roman culture (art, architecture or literature) on later periods in British history, including the present day
- a significant turning point in British history, for example, the first railways or the Battle of Britain

- the achievements of the earliest civilizations – an overview of where and when the first civilizations appeared and a depth study of one of the following: Ancient Sumer; The Indus Valley; Ancient Egypt; The Shang Dynasty of Ancient China
- Ancient Greece – a study of Greek life and achievements and their influence on the western world



## History

- a non-European society that provides contrasts with British history – one study chosen from: early Islamic civilization, including a study of Baghdad c. AD 900; Mayan civilization c. AD 900; Benin (West Africa) c. AD 900-1300.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should extend and deepen their chronologically secure knowledge and understanding of British, local and world history, so that it provides a well-informed context for wider learning. Pupils should identify significant events, make connections, draw contrasts, and analyse trends within periods and over long arcs of time. They should use historical terms and concepts in increasingly sophisticated ways. They should pursue historically valid enquiries including some they have framed themselves, and create relevant, structured and evidentially supported accounts in response. They should understand how different types of historical sources are used rigorously to make historical claims and discern how and why contrasting arguments and interpretations of the past have been constructed.

In planning to ensure the progression described above through teaching the British, local and world history outlined below, teachers should combine overview and depth studies to help pupils understand both the long arc of development and the complexity of specific aspects of the content.

Pupils should be taught about:

- the development of Church, state and society in Medieval Britain 1066-1509

#### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- the Norman Conquest
- Christendom, the importance of religion and the Crusades
- the struggle between Church and crown
- Magna Carta and the emergence of Parliament
- the English campaigns to conquer Wales and Scotland up to 1314
- society, economy and culture: for example, feudalism, religion in daily life (parishes, monasteries, abbeys), farming, trade and towns (especially the wool trade), art, architecture and literature
- the Black Death and its social and economic impact
- the Peasants' Revolt
- the Hundred Years War
- the Wars of the Roses; Henry VII and attempts to restore stability

## History

- the development of Church, state and society in Britain 1509-1745

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- Renaissance and Reformation in Europe
- the English Reformation and Counter Reformation (Henry VIII to Mary I)
- the Elizabethan religious settlement and conflict with Catholics (including Scotland, Spain and Ireland)
- the first colony in America and first contact with India
- the causes and events of the civil wars throughout Britain
- the Interregnum (including Cromwell in Ireland)
- the Restoration, 'Glorious Revolution' and power of Parliament
- the Act of Union of 1707, the Hanoverian succession and the Jacobite rebellions of 1715 and 1745
- society, economy and culture across the period: for example, work and leisure in town and country, religion and superstition in daily life, theatre, art, music and literature

- ideas, political power, industry and empire: Britain, 1745-1901

### Examples (non-statutory)

This could include:

- the Enlightenment in Europe and Britain, with links back to 17<sup>th</sup>-Century thinkers and scientists and the founding of the Royal Society
- Britain's transatlantic slave trade: its effects and its eventual abolition
- the Seven Years War and The American War of Independence
- the French Revolutionary wars
- Britain as the first industrial nation – the impact on society
- party politics, extension of the franchise and social reform
- the development of the British Empire with a depth study (for example, of India)
- Ireland and Home Rule
- Darwin's 'On The Origin of Species'

## History

- challenges for Britain, Europe and the wider world 1901 to the present day

In addition to studying the Holocaust, this could include:

### Examples (non-statutory)

- women's suffrage
- the First World War and the Peace Settlement
- the inter-war years: the Great Depression and the rise of dictators
- the Second World War and the wartime leadership of Winston Churchill
- the creation of the Welfare State
- Indian independence and end of Empire
- social, cultural and technological change in post-war British society
- Britain's place in the world since 1945

- a local history study

### Examples (non-statutory)

- a depth study linked to one of the British areas of study listed above
- a study over time, testing how far sites in their locality reflect aspects of national history (some sites may predate 1066)
- a study of an aspect or site in local history dating from a period before 1066

- the study of an aspect or theme in British history that consolidates and extends pupils' chronological knowledge from before 1066

### Examples (non-statutory)

- the changing nature of political power in Britain, traced through selective case studies from the Iron Age to the present
- Britain's changing landscape from the Iron Age to the present
- a study of an aspect of social history, such as the impact through time of the migration of people to, from and within the British Isles
- a study in depth into a significant turning point: for example, the Neolithic Revolution

- at least one study of a significant society or issue in world history and its interconnections with other world developments [for example, Mughal India 1526-1857; China's Qing dynasty 1644-1911; Changing Russian empires c.1800-1989; USA in the 20<sup>th</sup> Century].

# Languages

## Purpose of study

Learning a foreign language is a liberation from insularity and provides an opening to other cultures. A high-quality languages education should foster pupils' curiosity and deepen their understanding of the world. The teaching should enable pupils to express their ideas and thoughts in another language and to understand and respond to its speakers, both in speech and in writing. It should also provide opportunities for them to communicate for practical purposes, learn new ways of thinking and read great literature in the original language. Language teaching should provide the foundation for learning further languages, equipping pupils to study and work in other countries.

## Aims

The national curriculum for languages aims to ensure that all pupils:

- understand and respond to spoken and written language from a variety of authentic sources
- speak with increasing confidence, fluency and spontaneity, finding ways of communicating what they want to say, including through discussion and asking questions, and continually improving the accuracy of their pronunciation and intonation
- can write at varying length, for different purposes and audiences, using the variety of grammatical structures that they have learnt
- discover and develop an appreciation of a range of writing in the language studied.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**

## Subject content

### Key stage 2: Foreign language

Teaching may be of any modern or ancient foreign language and should focus on enabling pupils to make substantial progress in one language. The teaching should provide an appropriate balance of spoken and written language and should lay the foundations for further foreign language teaching at key stage 3. It should enable pupils to understand and communicate ideas, facts and feelings in speech and writing, focused on familiar and routine matters, using their knowledge of phonology, grammatical structures and vocabulary.

The focus of study in modern languages will be on practical communication. If an ancient language is chosen the focus will be to provide a linguistic foundation for reading comprehension and an appreciation of classical civilisation. Pupils studying ancient languages may take part in simple oral exchanges, while discussion of what they read will be conducted in English. A linguistic foundation in ancient languages may support the study of modern languages at key stage 3.

Pupils should be taught to:

- listen attentively to spoken language and show understanding by joining in and responding
- explore the patterns and sounds of language through songs and rhymes and link the spelling, sound and meaning of words
- engage in conversations; ask and answer questions; express opinions and respond to those of others; seek clarification and help\*
- speak in sentences, using familiar vocabulary, phrases and basic language structures
- develop accurate pronunciation and intonation so that others understand when they are reading aloud or using familiar words and phrases\*
- present ideas and information orally to a range of audiences\*
- read carefully and show understanding of words, phrases and simple writing
- appreciate stories, songs, poems and rhymes in the language
- broaden their vocabulary and develop their ability to understand new words that are introduced into familiar written material, including through using a dictionary
- write phrases from memory, and adapt these to create new sentences, to express ideas clearly
- describe people, places, things and actions orally\* and in writing

## Languages

- understand basic grammar appropriate to the language being studied, including (where relevant): feminine, masculine and neuter forms and the conjugation of high-frequency verbs; key features and patterns of the language; how to apply these, for instance, to build sentences; and how these differ from or are similar to English.

The starred (\*) content above will not be applicable to ancient languages.

### Key stage 3: Modern foreign language

Teaching may be of any modern foreign language and should build on the foundations of language learning laid at key stage 2, whether pupils continue with the same language or take up a new one. Teaching should focus on developing the breadth and depth of pupils' competence in listening, speaking, reading and writing, based on a sound foundation of core grammar and vocabulary. It should enable pupils to understand and communicate personal and factual information that goes beyond their immediate needs and interests, developing and justifying points of view in speech and writing, with increased spontaneity, independence and accuracy. It should provide suitable preparation for further study.

Pupils should be taught to:

#### Grammar and vocabulary

- identify and use tenses or other structures which convey the present, past, and future as appropriate to the language being studied
- use and manipulate a variety of key grammatical structures and patterns, including voices and moods, as appropriate
- develop and use a wide-ranging and deepening vocabulary that goes beyond their immediate needs and interests, allowing them to give and justify opinions and take part in discussion about wider issues
- use accurate grammar, spelling and punctuation.

#### Linguistic competence

- listen to a variety of forms of spoken language to obtain information and respond appropriately
- transcribe words and short sentences that they hear with increasing accuracy
- initiate and develop conversations, coping with unfamiliar language and unexpected responses, making use of important social conventions such as formal modes of address
- express and develop ideas clearly and with increasing accuracy, both orally and in writing
- speak coherently and confidently, with increasingly accurate pronunciation and intonation
- read and show comprehension of original and adapted materials from a range of different sources, understanding the purpose, important ideas and details, and provide an accurate English translation of short, suitable material
- read literary texts in the language [such as stories, songs, poems and letters], to stimulate ideas, develop creative expression and expand understanding of the language and culture

## Languages

- write prose using an increasingly wide range of grammar and vocabulary, write creatively to express their own ideas and opinions, and translate short written text accurately into the foreign language.



# Music

## Purpose of study

Music is a universal language that embodies one of the highest forms of creativity. A high-quality music education should engage and inspire pupils to develop a love of music and their talent as musicians, and so increase their self-confidence, creativity and sense of achievement. As pupils progress, they should develop a critical engagement with music, allowing them to compose, and to listen with discrimination to the best in the musical canon.

## Aims

The national curriculum for music aims to ensure that all pupils:

- perform, listen to, review and evaluate music across a range of historical periods, genres, styles and traditions, including the works of the great composers and musicians
- learn to sing and to use their voices, to create and compose music on their own and with others, have the opportunity to learn a musical instrument, use technology appropriately and have the opportunity to progress to the next level of musical excellence
- understand and explore how music is created, produced and communicated, including through the inter-related dimensions: pitch, duration, dynamics, tempo, timbre, texture, structure and appropriate musical notations.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should be taught to:

- use their voices expressively and creatively by singing songs and speaking chants and rhymes
- play tuned and untuned instruments musically
- listen with concentration and understanding to a range of high-quality live and recorded music
- experiment with, create, select and combine sounds using the inter-related dimensions of music.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should be taught to sing and play musically with increasing confidence and control. They should develop an understanding of musical composition, organising and manipulating ideas within musical structures and reproducing sounds from aural memory.

Pupils should be taught to:

- play and perform in solo and ensemble contexts, using their voices and playing musical instruments with increasing accuracy, fluency, control and expression
- improvise and compose music for a range of purposes using the inter-related dimensions of music
- listen with attention to detail and recall sounds with increasing aural memory
- use and understand staff and other musical notations
- appreciate and understand a wide range of high-quality live and recorded music drawn from different traditions and from great composers and musicians
- develop an understanding of the history of music.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should build on their previous knowledge and skills through performing, composing and listening. They should develop their vocal and/or instrumental fluency, accuracy and expressiveness; and understand musical structures, styles, genres and traditions, identifying the expressive use of musical dimensions. They should listen with increasing discrimination and awareness to inform their practice as musicians. They should use technologies appropriately and appreciate and understand a wide range of musical contexts and styles.

Pupils should be taught to:

- play and perform confidently in a range of solo and ensemble contexts using their voice, playing instruments musically, fluently and with accuracy and expression
- improvise and compose; and extend and develop musical ideas by drawing on a range of musical structures, styles, genres and traditions
- use staff and other relevant notations appropriately and accurately in a range of musical styles, genres and traditions
- identify and use the inter-related dimensions of music expressively and with increasing sophistication, including use of tonalities, different types of scales and other musical devices
- listen with increasing discrimination to a wide range of music from great composers and musicians
- develop a deepening understanding of the music that they perform and to which they listen, and its history.

# Physical education

## Purpose of study

A high-quality physical education curriculum inspires all pupils to succeed and excel in competitive sport and other physically-demanding activities. It should provide opportunities for pupils to become physically confident in a way which supports their health and fitness. Opportunities to compete in sport and other activities build character and help to embed values such as fairness and respect.

## Aims

The national curriculum for physical education aims to ensure that all pupils:

- develop competence to excel in a broad range of physical activities
- are physically active for sustained periods of time
- engage in competitive sports and activities
- lead healthy, active lives.

## Attainment targets

By the end of each key stage, pupils are expected to know, apply and understand the matters, skills and processes specified in the relevant programme of study.

**Schools are not required by law to teach the example content in [square brackets].**

## Subject content

### Key stage 1

Pupils should develop fundamental movement skills, become increasingly competent and confident and access a broad range of opportunities to extend their agility, balance and coordination, individually and with others. They should be able to engage in competitive (both against self and against others) and co-operative physical activities, in a range of increasingly challenging situations.

Pupils should be taught to:

- master basic movements including running, jumping, throwing and catching, as well as developing balance, agility and co-ordination, and begin to apply these in a range of activities
- participate in team games, developing simple tactics for attacking and defending
- perform dances using simple movement patterns.

### Key stage 2

Pupils should continue to apply and develop a broader range of skills, learning how to use them in different ways and to link them to make actions and sequences of movement. They should enjoy communicating, collaborating and competing with each other. They should develop an understanding of how to improve in different physical activities and sports and learn how to evaluate and recognise their own success.

Pupils should be taught to:

- use running, jumping, throwing and catching in isolation and in combination
- play competitive games, modified where appropriate [for example, badminton, basketball, cricket, football, hockey, netball, rounders and tennis], and apply basic principles suitable for attacking and defending
- develop flexibility, strength, technique, control and balance [for example, through athletics and gymnastics]
- perform dances using a range of movement patterns
- take part in outdoor and adventurous activity challenges both individually and within a team
- compare their performances with previous ones and demonstrate improvement to achieve their personal best.

## Physical education

### Swimming and water safety

All schools must provide swimming instruction either in key stage 1 or key stage 2.

In particular, pupils should be taught to:

- swim competently, confidently and proficiently over a distance of at least 25 metres
- use a range of strokes effectively [for example, front crawl, backstroke and breaststroke]
- perform safe self-rescue in different water-based situations.

### Key stage 3

Pupils should build on and embed the physical development and skills learned in key stages 1 and 2, become more competent, confident and expert in their techniques, and apply them across different sports and physical activities. They should understand what makes a performance effective and how to apply these principles to their own and others' work. They should develop the confidence and interest to get involved in exercise, sports and activities out of school and in later life, and understand and apply the long-term health benefits of physical activity.

Pupils should be taught to:

- use a range of tactics and strategies to overcome opponents in direct competition through team and individual games [for example, badminton, basketball, cricket, football, hockey, netball, rounders, rugby and tennis]
- develop their technique and improve their performance in other competitive sports [for example, athletics and gymnastics]
- perform dances using advanced dance techniques within a range of dance styles and forms
- take part in outdoor and adventurous activities which present intellectual and physical challenges and be encouraged to work in a team, building on trust and developing skills to solve problems, either individually or as a group
- analyse their performances compared to previous ones and demonstrate improvement to achieve their personal best
- take part in competitive sports and activities outside school through community links or sports clubs.

## Key stage 4

Pupils should tackle complex and demanding physical activities. They should get involved in a range of activities that develops personal fitness and promotes an active, healthy lifestyle.

Pupils should be taught to:

- use and develop a variety of tactics and strategies to overcome opponents in team and individual games [for example, badminton, basketball, cricket, football, hockey, netball, rounders, rugby and tennis]
- develop their technique and improve their performance in other competitive sports,[for example, athletics and gymnastics], or other physical activities [for example, dance]
- take part in further outdoor and adventurous activities in a range of environments which present intellectual and physical challenges and which encourage pupils to work in a team, building on trust and developing skills to solve problems, either individually or as a group
- evaluate their performances compared to previous ones and demonstrate improvement across a range of physical activities to achieve their personal best
- continue to take part regularly in competitive sports and activities outside school through community links or sports clubs.



Department  
for Education

© Crown copyright 2013

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

visit [www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2](http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2)

email [psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk)

About this publication:

enquiries [www.education.gov.uk/contactus](http://www.education.gov.uk/contactus)

download [www.gov.uk/dfe/nationalcurriculum](http://www.gov.uk/dfe/nationalcurriculum)

Reference: DFE-00177-2013



Follow us on Twitter:  
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:  
[facebook.com/educationgovuk](https://facebook.com/educationgovuk)